



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>



EducT

918.59

735



Edue T 918.59.735

**HARVARD COLLEGE  
LIBRARY**



**THE ESSEX INSTITUTE  
TEXT-BOOK COLLECTION**

**GIFT OF  
GEORGE ARTHUR PLIMPTON  
OF NEW YORK**

**JANUARY 25, 1924**







3 2044 097 062 434

Los. Abbott,























# LATIN LESSONS

AND

## T A B L E S :

COMBINING

THE ANALYTIC AND SYNTHETIC METHODS ;

CONSISTING OF

SELECTIONS FROM CÆSAR'S COMMENTARIES,

WITH

A COMPLETE SYSTEM OF MEMORIZING THE GRAMMAR,  
NOTES, EXERCISES IN TRANSLATING FROM  
ENGLISH INTO LATIN, TABLES,  
AND A VOCABULARY.

BY

CYRUS S. RICHARDS, A. M.,

PRINCIPAL OF KIMBALL UNION ACADEMY, MERIDEN, N. H.

---

B O S T O N :  
PHILLIPS, SAMPSON, AND COMPANY.  
1859.



Edue T 918.59.735

✓  
HARVARD COLLEGE LIBRARY  
GIFT OF  
GEORGE ARTHUR PLIMPTON  
JANUARY 25, 1924

Entered, according to Act of Congress, in the year 1859, by  
PHILLIPS, SAMPSON & CO.,  
In the Clerk's Office of the District Court of the District of Massachusetts.

ELECTROTYPED AT THE  
BOSTON STEREO TYPE FOUNDRY.



## P R E F A C E.

---

IN the volume here offered to the public, the writer has attempted to supply a deficiency in our elementary text books in the study of Latin. It is designed to occupy the same place in the commencement of the Latin that the excellent little work of Prof. Crosby—his Greek Lessons—does in the Greek. It is modelled after the same general plan, with an attempt to improve somewhat on the original.

The dissatisfaction with the great variety of *first books* now in use in this department of instruction, it is believed, is very generally shared by classical teachers throughout the country. The system on which the most of these works are based, it would seem, is essentially erroneous. The practical working of it, after a fair trial, and in the best hands, abundantly proves this. It is too intensely analytical and Ollendorffian. We had, not many years since, an illustration in point in Smith's English Grammar. The simple elements of the language were so minutely and atomically dissected and distributed, by a too severe analysis, as to lose almost entirely, in the apprehension of the beginner, their unity and connection. The student became acquainted with a great many facts and definitions, yet they were so detached and isolated that he failed to discover that they were *related* facts, and that this very relation to other things was a necessary condition of their definition. And he often became so bewildered in this analytical maze as never after to distinguish clearly grammatical relations.



We have often met with bright, intelligent students of Latin, into whose hands these analytical books have been put by their teachers, who have spent a year or more upon detached, isolated sentences and exercises, with dissected portions of the Grammar interspersed, who had become equally befogged and bewildered, and who were entirely lost and perplexed, when put into connected sentences of the regular classical authors. The writer has for years abandoned this whole system, as such; and it is believed that our best teachers are fast doing the same, and that there is a rapidly-increasing demand for a different course.

The true theory, on the contrary, will be found, we believe, in judiciously *combining the analytic and synthetic methods*. In the study of Latin, for instance, the student should be employed upon *real forms*, and not upon *imaginary ones*—upon *classical Latin in the classical order of construction*, and not upon Latin manufactured for his special benefit—*upon the classical, idiomatic structure of a sentence*, and not upon an artificial, English structure, because it may be easier for the present. He should, as early as possible, after acquiring a knowledge of some of the simple elements of the language, such as definitions, forms, inflections, &c., be employed upon *connected discourse*, and not upon detached, isolated sentences. This point the author has found of great importance in the practical results of more than twenty years' experience as a teacher. It will present more difficulties, it is admitted, at first. The progress in the outset must be slower, but vastly more interesting both to teacher and pupil, and vastly more satisfactory. There will be more need of assistance, perhaps, of patient repetition, of careful and frequent analyses of etymological forms, of simple and compound constructions, &c.; yet, as all these difficulties must be met some time, the sooner they are met, with the conditions above specified, the better. Again, an exact, accurate translation from one language to another, preserving with precision and purity the peculiar idioms of each, can be well learned only in connected discourse. The advantage in this respect, also,



of carrying along *the two translations, from Latin into English, and from English into Latin*, will be found to be very great.

Again, still, as the Grammar is to be the hand-book of the student through his entire curriculum, it scarcely needs any argument, it would seem, to show that all his associations in this respect should be with this companion of his future study. The practice of doing violence to this familiar principle of association, in distributing the Grammar in shreds and detached portions through an introductory book, is very unphilosophical both in theory and practice.

In accordance with the foregoing principles, we may now present very briefly the plan of these lessons.

I. First, then, there will be found a complete, and, it is hoped, a judicious *system of memorizing the Grammar*, indicated at the beginning and in the progress of each lesson, by exact references. The revised edition of Andrews and Stoddard's Grammar is referred to, as it is very generally used, and is, no doubt, on the whole, the best yet published. As this system has been carefully studied, and faithfully proved by experiment in the school room, it is earnestly urged that it be strictly followed, without addition or subtraction.

II. All the selections in these lessons are strictly and purely *classical Latin*, retaining always the *classical construction without alteration*. A few paragraphs, however, have been introduced in brackets, merely as drill exercises on the forms, or as introductory to connected sentences. These extracts are taken mostly, the connected passages entirely, from Cæsar. The first ten lessons consist of *illustrative sentences*, in connection with which a comparatively full summary of the whole Grammar is taken up to be carefully memorized and discussed. This part of the work presents a method somewhat, if not entirely, new, beginning with the formative or flexible part of the verb, and subjecting it to a careful analysis and translation. This mode of treating the verb, we believe, will commend itself to every one who will make a fair trial of it. In the drill on forms, we have grouped in the same connection



those parts that are really or analogously related more rapidly than is usually done, as the scholar will be assisted by comparison as well as by similarity ; as, for instance, in the verb, both voices and all the tenses of the same mode are exhibited together, that the scholar may, from the first, become accustomed readily to distinguish them. So the first and second declensions of nouns and adjectives are associated, while the third declension of nouns and adjectives, the complete tenses of verbs, the subjunctive mode, &c., are treated distinctly. The last fifteen lessons consist of a connected passage, comprising the first twenty sections of Cæsar's Gallic War. This author has been chosen on account of the purity, simplicity, and regularity of his style — the Xenophon of Latin writers.

III. In connection with each Latin lesson there is a corresponding lesson in *translation from English into Latin*. These are at first short and simple, based upon the corresponding Latin lesson, on the principle of imitation. They are designed to be progressive, keeping pace with the scholar's progress in the knowledge of the language, constituting a most excellent review and application of grammatical principles.

IV. *Notes* have been carefully prepared, at first full and copious, in references to grammatical principles, and in the analysis of idiomatic constructions and syntactical peculiarities. They are designed to be suggestive both to teacher and scholar, furnishing as little direct assistance as may be, *without positive discouragement*, yet prompting to investigation on the part of the pupil, guiding and directing his own personal efforts. They will be thought by some, perhaps, to be too full ; by more, no doubt, not full enough.

V. We have added, with more labor on our own part than in the other parts of the book, a *series of illustrative Tables*. They are designed principally to be *supplementary* to the Grammar, which, with all its excellences and fulness, is confessedly deficient in etymological analyses, euphonic changes of inflection, &c., as are all



the Latin Grammars yet published in this country. The construction of these Tables is an attempt to supply, in part at least, this deficiency. It must have often occurred to the student of Latin as a matter of surprise, that, while so much has been done in this department of philology in the Greek language, so little has been attempted in the Latin. The author is aware that he lays himself open to criticism in this part of his work. The ground has before been mostly unbroken. He has found very few way-marks to guide his investigations, and he must be held responsible for very many of his conclusions. He may therefore claim the indulgence of his fellow-teachers, while he would invite their attention to this long-neglected subject. If this imperfect effort shall contribute at all to a more perfect system of Latin etymology, he will feel rewarded for his labor.

VI. The *Vocabulary* has been prepared with more care than is usual in introductory books, especially with reference to the relation of prepositions and conjunctions, the composition and derivation of words, the formation of complete tenses, &c., indicated by full references to the Grammar and Tables.

We add a few SPECIAL SUGGESTIONS and EXPLANATIONS to teachers and scholars.

1. Let the directions contained in the Notes be *strictly* and *rigidly* followed, first memorizing such parts of the Grammar and tables as are indicated in each lesson. Discriminate carefully those references to be *committed* and those only to be *studied*. Some discretion, however, must be left with the teacher; as, for instance, it may not be thought best at first to commit all the sections relating to pronunciation before proceeding to other subjects, but to distribute these sections into several other lessons, &c.

2. After the grammar of each lesson is perfectly memorized, let the pupil construe the Latin lesson into English, observing carefully the directions of the Notes, and parsing each word strictly by the Table, in ¶ 24, analyzing each element of the affix according to the directions in the Notes to Lesson II., till they become perfectly familiar.

3. Translate into Latin the corresponding lesson of English, commencing on page 20th, observing the directions in the Notes with regard to the construction of words and sentences, &c., and imitating closely the Latin text. Whenever a word is required not already given in the Latin lessons, it will



be suggested in the notes. The words in *Italics* in the first ten lessons are not to be expressed in Latin. It is expected that these lessons will be invariably translated in their place, with such additional extemporaneous exercises as the teacher may find time to suggest.

4. It will promote precision and accuracy, and in the end be a saving of time, to refer to the rules of syntax by number, as suggested in the Notes. Let declensions be uniformly given in full, till great facility is acquired, abbreviating according to ¶ 4 (a): Every verb should be conjugated throughout, and the rule for the formation of the complete tenses given according to ¶ 15. Derivation, composition, euphonic and vowel changes should receive careful attention.

5. Great importance is attached to constant and thorough reviews, both of Grammar and reading lessons. In the early part of the course, the last six lessons, at least, should be reviewed each day. An immense deal of time is lost in every school and by every scholar on account of wrong views and wrong practice in this respect.

6. Do not be in a hurry: do your *foundation work* well; then the superstructure will be easily and safely added. There is enough in this little book for at least three terms, with only one other study in connection with it.

C. S. RICHARDS.

MERIDEN, May 1, 1859.



# CONTENTS.

---

I. LATIN LESSONS, .....	PAGE 1
II. EXERCISES IN ENGLISH TO BE TURNED INTO LATIN, .....	20
III. NOTES, .....	31

## IV. TABLES.

	PAGE		PAGE
1. Alphabet, .....	61	(b.) Third Declension, <i>celeber</i> , <i>brevis</i> , <i>altior</i> , .....	67
2. Vocal Elements, .....	61	9. Euphonic Laws of Declension :—	
3. Quantity, Syllables, Division of Syllables, &c., .....	62	I. Nominative Singular of mascu- lines and feminines, .....	67
4 (a.) Remarks—Ellipses in the Paradigms, .....	62	II. (1.) With a Labial characteristic, .....	67
4. I. Affixes of the Declensions, .....	63	(2.) A Palatal, .....	67
II. Analyses of the Affixes, .....	64	(3.) A Lingual, .....	67
5. Paradigms of the Five Declen- sions :—		(4.) A Liquid, .....	67
(a.) Masculines and Feminines, ..	64	Remarks on Liquid and mon- osyllabic nouns, .....	67
(b.) Neuters, .....	64	III. Neuter nouns, remarks, &c., ...	68
6. Variations of the Several Declen- sions :—		IV. Vowel changes in the theme of nouns of all genders, .....	68
(a.) Second Declension, .....	65	10. General Table of Gender, .....	69
(b.) Third Declension :—		11. Synoptical Table of Conjugation :—	
(1.) Labials, <i>stirps</i> , <i>urbs</i> , .....	65	(a.) Personal Affixes—nude, ....	69
(2.) Palatals, <i>pax</i> , <i>judez</i> , <i>lex</i> , <i>niz</i> , ..	65	(b.) Euphonic Affixes, .....	69
(3.) Linguals, <i>adamas</i> , <i>glans</i> , <i>miles</i> , <i>nox</i> , <i>Tyrris</i> , .....	65	(1.) Indicative, .....	69
(4.) Liquids, (a.) <i>m</i> , <i>n</i> , <i>hiems</i> , <i>virgo</i> , <i>sanguis</i> , <i>pecten</i> , <i>caro</i> , ..	65	(2.) Subjunctive, .....	70
(b.) <i>l</i> , <i>r</i> , <i>consul</i> , <i>honor</i> , <i>flos</i> , <i>pubis</i> , <i>pater</i> , .....	66	(3.) Imperative, Infinitive, and Participle, .....	70
7. (5.) Monosyllabic and Analogous roots, <i>fames</i> , <i>nubes</i> , <i>auris</i> , <i>pa- nis</i> , <i>securis</i> , .....	66	(4.) Gerund and Supine, .....	71
(6.) Neuters, <i>mare</i> , <i>lac</i> , <i>mel</i> , <i>cor- pus</i> , <i>robor</i> , <i>funus</i> , .....	66	12. General Principles of Conjugation :—	
8. Adjectives :—		I. Personal Endings—pronominal ; personal, plural, and passive signs, .....	71
(a.) First and Second Declen- sions, <i>altus</i> , <i>asper</i> , .....	66	II. Euphonic endings ; variations of the euphonic vowels ; note on pure verbs ; remarks, &c., ...	71



13. Table of signs and mode vowels, 72	in <i>r</i> ; <i>s</i> , uniting with a palatal breathing in <i>fluo, struo</i> ; &c. 77
14. III. Complete Tenses, peculiar increment of the root with an affix of a form of the verb <i>sum</i> , ..... 72	17. Euphonic Changes of Conso- nants:—
15. Modes of increasing the root of the complete tenses:—	(a.) Before <i>t</i> and <i>s</i> in complete Tenses, ..... 77
(a.) Distinct modes, ..... 73	(b.) Prepositions in Composition, 78
(b.) Incorporated modes, ..... 73	18. Abbreviated Table of Preposi- tions in Composition, ..... 78
16. Examples of Conjugation:—	19. Analysis of Conjugation:—
I. With increments in <i>v</i> ; ..... 74	(1.) Definite and Indefinite Tenses, 79
(a.) 1 Conjugation, ..... 74	(2.) Complete Tenses, ..... 80
(b.) 2 Conjugation, ..... 74	20. Synopsis of the Modes and Ten- ses of Conjugation, ..... 80
(c.) 3 Conjugation, ..... 74	21. The Law of the Modes:—
(d.) 4 Conjugation, ..... 74	(a.) The Indicative, ..... 81
II. With Increments in <i>u</i> ;—	(b.) The Subjunctive, ..... 81
(a.) 1 Conjugation, ..... 74	1. Final Clauses or Sentences, .. 81
(b.) 2 Conjugation, ..... 74	2. Conditional, ..... 81
(c.) 3 Conjugation, ..... 75	3. Concessive, ..... 82
(d.) 4 Conjugation, ..... 75	4. Relative, ..... 82
III. With Increments in <i>s</i> ;—	5. Complementary, ..... 82
(a.) 2 Conjugation, ..... 75	22. Analysis of a Latin Sentence:—
(b.) 3 Conjugation, ..... 75	Remarks, &c., ..... 83
(c.) 4 Conjugation, ..... 75	Table of Construction, ..... 84
IV. Increments by lengthening the Root Vowel:—	Table of Relation, ..... 84
(a.) 1 Conjugation, ..... 75	23. Condensed Synopsis of the rules of Latin Syntax:—
(b.) 2 Conjugation, ..... 75	(A.) General Rules, ..... 84
(c.) 3 Conjugation, ..... 76	(1.) Direct Relations, ..... 84
(d.) 4 Conjugation, ..... 76	(2.) Indirect Relations, ..... 85
V. Increments by Reduplication:—	(B.) Special Rules, ..... 85
(a.) 1 Conjugation, ..... 76	24. A Synopsis of parsing the sev- eral Parts of Speech, ..... 88
(b.) 2 Conjugation, ..... 76	25. An Analysis of the irregular verb <i>sum</i> :—
(c.) 3 Conjugation, ..... 76	(a.) With the root <i>s</i> , ..... 80
VI. Cases not included above:—	(b.) With the root <i>es</i> ..... 91
Some receive no increment, ... 76	An Analysis of the endings of the perfect indicative ac- tive, and the imperative mode, ..... 92
Remarks, (1.) verbs fluctu- ating between two or more modes of increment; (2.) syn- copating the increment let- ter; (4.) varying the con- necting vowel, ..... 76	26. English Etymologies; with Il- lustrative Tables of, ..... 93
When the theme ends in <i>v</i> or <i>u</i> ; the complete tense formed from an older root; the root reduplicated in the present: Metathesis of roots ending	(a.) Adjectives, ..... 93
	(b.) Nouns, ..... 93
	(c.) Verbs, ..... 93
V. VOCABULARY, ..... 95	
VI. ABBREVIATIONS, ..... 129	



# LATIN LESSONS.

---

## LESSON I.

1. [M; s; t; mus; tis; nt; r; ris; tur; mur; mīni; ntur; mus; t; s; nt; r; mur; ntur; tis; m; tur; mīni; t; nt; s; mur; ntur; mus; t.

2. O; at; amus; amīni; et; emus; amur; ent; it; unt; io; eor; itur; imīni; iunt; antur; emīni; aris; iuntur; or; 5  
eris; atis; imus; emur; es; as; iris; atur; ant; is; itis; ire; ant; entur.

3. Abam; abant; ebar; ebat; ebāmus; iēbam; iēbar; abāris; ebamīni; iebantur; ebāmur; abas; iebātis; ebāmus; ebar; abamīni; ebātur; iebāmus. 10

4. Ebo; ābis; ēbit; abīmus; ēbunt; ābor; ebēris; ābo; ebuntur; abīmur; ebimīni; abit; abēris; ebītur; am; ies; es; iet; iam; emus; emur; iar; eris; iētur; ent; ientur; ar; iēmur; emīni; iēris; abunt.]

## LESSON II.

1. [Das. Damus. Dant. Datur. Do. Dantur. Dabat. 15  
Dabitur. Dabantur. Dabo. Divīdis. Divīdor. Dividīmus.  
Divīdunt. Dividēbam. Dividebātur. Divīdet. Appellat.



Appellāmus. Appellor. Appellābat. Appellabāmur. Gerēbam. Gero. Gerunt. Gerēbat. Gerēmus. Gerentur. Commūnit. Communiunt. Communiēbant. Communiebantur. Incōlo. Incōlit. Incolitur. Incolimus. Incolēbat.]

5 2. Filiam dat. Garumna dividit. Galli appellantur. Bellum gerunt. Galliæ imperium. Agrum dividunt. Pro gloriā belli. Jumentōrum et carrōrum numērus. Castellum commūnit. Trans Rhenum incōlunt. Filiam in matrimonium dat. Provinciam dividēbat. Oppīdum natūrā loci commu-  
10 niebātur.

### LESSON III.

1. [Committit. Committunt. Committitur. Committēbat. Committimus. Committimur. Committent. Committor. Committebāmus. Committar. Habet. Habēmus. Habētur. Habebantur. Habēbit. Habebuntur. Habebamīni.  
15 Avertō. Avertunt. Avertēbam. Avertebāmus. Avertent. Nuncio. Nuncior. Nunciābar. Nunciābat. Nunciābit. Nunciant. Subjicio. Subjiciēbam. Subjiciēbar. Subjiciēbat. Subjiciebantur. Subjiciet. Vulnērat. Vulnerābat. Vulnerabāmur. Vulnerātis. Vulnēras. Petēbas. Petit.  
20 Petuntur. Petimur. Petar. Petētur. Petis. Petentur.]

2. Aliēno loco praelium committunt. Pagus unus. Magnum numērum habēbat. In Populum Romānum. Multis cum lacrymis. In reliquā Galliā. Totius Galliæ animi avertuntur. Nostros expectābat praeliōque abstinēbat. Inter  
25 carros rotasque matāras subjiciēbant nostrosque vulnerābant. Per fugitivos nunciātur. A Populo Romāno. Multis cum lacrymis auxilium petēbant.



## LESSON IV.

1. [Cantāmus. Cantābam. Cantas. Cantābit. Cantābat. Clamo. Clamant. Clamābas. Clamābunt. Vocas. Vocabātis. Vocābunt. Vocātur. Vocāmur. Vocabūtur. Sumus. Estis. Erant. Erāmus. Erit. Erunt. Placent. Placēbant. Placebāmus. Placēbunt. Cogit. Cogitur. Cogebantur. Cogunt. Cogent. Cogēmus. Rego. Judicat. Judicābant. Judicābunt. Judicantur. Judicor. Mitto. Mittimus. Mittor. Mittēbar. Mittam. Mittit.]

2. Ego canto, tu clamas, ille vocat. Nos Galli appellāmur, vos Romāni. Hæc sententia mihi placet, illa displicet. Hic 10 puer industrius est, ille ignāvus. Iste amicus est vir bonus. Beāti sunt ii quorum vita bonis præceptis regitur. Is pagus appellabātur Tigurinus. Paulatim etiam ii, qui magnum in castris usum habēbant, perturbantur. Qui trans Rhenum incolēbant. Helvetii legātos ad eum mittunt. Inter se 15 jusjurandum dant. Ad iudicium suam familiam cogit. Qui se ipse dignum custodiā iudicat.

## LESSON V.

1. In Galliam per Alpes. Qui plebi acceptus erat. Illi cum iis pacem faciunt. Qui bello Cassiāno dux Helvetiōrum erat. Hi legibus inter se differunt. Dumnorigem ad se 20 vocat. Nix humeros infusa tegit. Ex eo oppido pons ad Helvetios pertinet. Ille Dumnorigi custōdes præponit. Milites conveniunt. Cæsar ad Lingōnes litēras nunciosque mittēbat. Ad eos mercatōres sæpe commeant. Pro multitudīne homīnum et pro gloriā belli atque fortitudinis. Nos, 25 nos consules desūmus. Helvetii jam per fines Sequanōrum suas copias transdūcunt. Flumen est Arar quod per fines Æduōrum in Rhodānum influit. Propter frigōra. In reliquum tempus. Iter ab Helvetiis avertit.



2. Aristovistus equestri praelio contendit. Gallia omnis dividitur in partes tres. Pertinent ad inferiorem partem fluminis Rheni. Recentium injuriarum. Horum omnium fortissimi sunt Belgæ. Apud Helvetios longe nobilissimus et ditissimus erat Orgetorix. Jumentorum et carrorum quam maximum numerum coeunt. Cum proximis civitatibus pacem et amicitiam confirmabant.

## LESSON VI.

1. Habemus senatus consultum in te, Catilina, vehemens et grave. Ergo vigilabam acrius ad salutem, quam tu ad perniciem, reipublicæ. Ille eo tempore principatum in civitate obtinebat ac maxime plebi acceptus erat. Ea res Helvetiis per indicium enunciebatur. Celeriter concilium dimittit, Liscum retinet. Dicit liberius atque audacius. Ea res non erat minus ex usu terræ Galliæ quam Populi Romani. Die nocturne animum fatigabat.

## LESSON VII.

1. Milites omnes, quos imperaverat, conveniunt. Cæsar militum animos confirmavit. Eam hostiam, quam ibi sacravit, totam adolevit. In eo itinere persuadet Castico, cujus pater regnum in Sequanis multos annos obtinuerat. Omnes clientes, quorum magnum numerum habebat, eodem conduxit; per eos se eripuit. Si Catilina subito pertimuerit, sententiam mutaverit, et consilium belli abjecerit. Conjuratiōem fecit et civitati persuasit. Is sibi legationem ad civitates suscepit. Ejus exercitum sub jugum miserat. Quibus agros dederunt. Reliquos omnes, obsides et perfugas tradiderunt.

2. [Imperavisti. Imperavero. Imperaveramus. Imperaverint. Imperaveras. Imperavi. Obtinueramus. Obtinuit. Obtinuērunt. Obtinuēris. Obtinuimus. Obtinuerimus.



Conduxi. Conduxērunt. Conduxisti. Conduxerāmus.  
 Conduxēris. Conduxerīmus. Feci. Fecisti. Fecēram.  
 Fecerātis. Fecēro. Fecērint. Dedit. Dedēram. Dedēro.  
 Dedērint. Dedisti. Tradīdi. Tradidēram. Tradiderīmus.]

## LESSON VIII.

1. Castella commūnit quò facilius Helvetios prohibeat. 5  
 Itāque rem suscipit, et a Sequānis impētrat, ut per fines suos  
 Helvetios ire patiantur, obsidesque uti inter se dent, perficit;  
 Sequāni, ne itinēre Helvetios prohibeant; Helvetiī, ut sine  
 maleficio et injuriā transeant. Diem dicunt, quā die ad  
 ripam Rhodāni omnes conveniant. Quare, Conscripti Patres, 10  
 secēdant imprōbi; secernant se a bonis. Hæc quum plu-  
 rībus verbis a Cæsare petēret, Cæsar dextram prendit. Ad  
 hæc Q. Marcius respondit, ut nemo unquam ab eo frustra  
 auxilium petivērit. Qui verentur ut habeam satis præsīdii.  
 Lacedæmonii legātos Athēnas misērunt, qui eum accusārent. 15  
 Si vales, bene est. Si quid habeat, dabit. Si quid habēret,  
 daret. Si Catilīna secum suos eduxērit, extinguetur rei-  
 publicæ pestis. Si Catilīna in urbe ad hanc diem reman-  
 sisset, nos rempublicam tantis pericūlis non liberāssēmus.  
 Qui sim, ex eo, quem ad te misi, cognosces. Video qui 20  
 habeat Etruriam.

2. [Prohibēret. Prohibeāmus. Prohibeantur. Prohibe-  
 rentur. Prohibeāmur. Patiar. Patiamīni. Paterētur.  
 Paterentur. Convenias. Conveniātur. Convenirent. Con-  
 venirentur. Conveniant. Secēdat. Secedāmus. Sece- 25  
 dērent. Secederētur. Secernerētur. Secernāmus. Petam.  
 Petērem. Petivērim. Petivērint. Petivisset. Petivissē-  
 mus, &c.]



## LESSON IX.

1. Muta jam istam mentem : mihi crede : obliviscere cædis atque incendiõrum. Educ tecum etiam omnes tuos. Vos, Quirites, veneramini illum Jovem, custodem hujus urbis ac vestrũ ; atque in vestra tecta discedite. Consules militiæ summum jus habento. Hujus oratiõnis difficilior est exitum quàm principium invenire. Pontem, qui erat ad Genèvam, jubet rescindi. Divitiacũ multis cum lacrymis Cæsarem obsecrare cœpit, 'ne quid gravius in fratrem statuëret ; scire se illa esse vera, nec quenquam ex eo plus, quàm se, doloris capere.'

2. Hæc quum pluribus verbis flens a Cæsare pretëret, Cæsar ejus dextram prendit ; consolatus rogat finem orandi faciat. Capto monte et succedentibus nostris. Boii et Tulingi nostros latere aperto aggressi sunt. Legatis respondit, 'diem ad deliberandum sumpturum.' Ad res conficiendas biennium sibi satis esse duxerunt. Quod mihi cum his vivendum sit quos vici ac subegi. His rebus adducti constituërent ea, quæ ad proficiscendum pertinërent, comparare. Ubi jam se ad eam rem paratos esse arbitrati sunt. Frumentum omne, præter quod secum portatũ erant, comburunt. Legati venerunt questum injurias. Quæ quisque facilia factu putat, æquo animo accipit.

## LESSON X.

1. Is, regni cupiditate inductus, conjurationem nobilitatis fecit, et civitati persuasit, ut de finibus suis cum omnibus copiis exirent. His rebus fiebat, ut et minus late vagarentur, et minus facile finitimis bellum inferre possent. Trium mensium molita cibaria sibi quemque domo efferre jubent. Eo opere perfecto, præsidia dispõnit, castella communit, quod facilius, si se invito transire conarentur, prohibere possit. Cæsari renunciatur Helvetiis esse in animo, per agrum Se-



quanōrum et Æduōrum iter in Santōnum fines facēre, qui non longe a Tolosatium finibus absunt, quæ civitas est in Provinciâ. Ædui, quum se suâque ab iis defendēre non possent, legātos ad Cæsārem mittunt rogātum auxilium.

## LESSON XI.

1. [Gallia omnis dividitur in partes tres. Galliam omnem 5 dividēbat in partes tres. Gallia omnis divisa est in partes tres, quarum partium, unam partem incōlunt Belgæ, aliam partem incōlunt Aquitāni, tertiam partem incōlunt ii, qui ipsōrum linguâ Celtæ appellantur, sed qui nostrâ linguâ Galli appellantur. Hi omnes populi linguâ inter se diffērunt, et 10 institūtis inter se diffērunt, et legibus inter se diffērunt. Gallos ab Aquitānis Garumna flumen dividit, et Gallos a Belgis Matrōna flumen et Sequāna flumen dividit.]

2. Gallia est omnis divisa in partes tres, quarum unam incōlunt Belgæ, aliam Aquitāni, tertiam, qui ipsōrum linguâ 15 Celtæ, nostrâ Galli, appellantur. Hi omnes linguâ, institūtis, legibus, inter se diffērunt. Gallos ab Aquitānis Garumna flumen, a Belgis Matrōna et Sequāna dividit.

## LESSON XII.

1. [Hi omnes sunt fortes, sed omnium fortissīmi sunt Belgæ, quòd a Provinciâ longissīme incōlunt, minimēque ad eos 20 mercatōres sæpe commeant, qui mercibus anīmos effemīnat, minimēque sæpe important ea, quæ anīmos effemināre pertīnent. Belgæ Aquitānis propiōres sunt Germānis, et Belgæ Aquitānis fortiōres sunt. Helvetii quoque fortissīmi sunt, quòd prope Germānos incōlunt. Ii, qui a Germānis longius 25 incōlunt, minus sunt fortes.]

2. Horum omnium fortissīmi sunt Belgæ, propterea quòd



a cultu atque humanitāte Provinciæ longissimè absunt, minimèque ad eos mercatōrēs sæpe commeant, atque ea, quæ ad effeminandos animos pertīnent, important; proximique sunt Germānis, qui trans Rhenum incolunt, quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt: quā de causā Helvetii quoque reliquos Gallos virtūte præcēdunt, quòd fere quotidianis præliis cum Germānis contendunt, quum aut suis finibus eos prohibent, aut ipsi in eorum finibus bellum gerunt.

### LESSON XIII.

1. Eōrum una pars, quam Gallos obtinēre dictum est, initium capit a flumine Rhodāno; continētur Garumnā flumīne, Oceāno, finibus Belgārum; attingit etiam ab Sequānis et Helvetiis flumen Rhenum; vergit ad septentriones. Belgæ ab extrēmis Galliæ finibus oriuntur; pertīnent ad inferiorem partem fluminis Rheni; spectant in septentriones et orientem solem. Aquitania a Garumnā flumīne ad Pyrenæos montes et eam partem Oceāni, quæ est ad Hispaniam, pertinet; spectat inter occāsum solis et septentriones.

2. [Quam Gallos obtentūros esse dictum est. Eōrum unam partem Galli obtinēbant. Galli unam partem obtinuisse dicti sunt. Flumen Garumna a Pyrenæis montibus initium capit. Unam partem Garumnā flumen, Oceānum, finesque Belgārum continēre dictum est. Galli Sequānos Helvetiosque attigērunt. Belgæ attackti sunt. Oceānus attacktūrus est. Oceānus attingendus est. Extrēma pars fluminis Rhodāno continebātur. Extrēma pars ad flumen Rhenum pertinēbit. Montes Pyrenæi ad occāsum solis spectant.]

### LESSON XIV.

1. Apud Helvetios longe nobilissimus et ditissimus fuit Orgetōrix. Is, Marco Messālā et Marco Pisōne consulibus,



regni cupiditate inductus, conjurationem nobilitatis fecit; et civitati persuasit, ut de finibus suis cum omnibus copiis exirent: [dicens] perfacile esse, quum virtute omnibus prae-  
starent, totius Galliae imperio potiri. Id hoc facilius eis persuasit, quod undique loci naturam Helvetii continentur: 5  
unam ex parte [continentur] flumine Rheno, latissimo atque altissimo, qui agrum Helvetium a Germanis dividit; alteram ex parte monte Juram altissimo, qui est inter Sequanos et Helvetios; tertiam [ex parte], lacu Lemanno, et flumine Rhodano, qui Provinciam nostram ab Helvetiis dividit. His 10  
rebus fiebat, ut et minus late vagarentur, et minus facile finitimis bellum inferre possent: quam de causa homines bel-  
landi cupidi magno dolore afficiebantur. Pro multitudine autem hominum, et pro gloria belli atque fortitudinis, angustos se fines habere arbitrantur, qui in longitudinem millia pas- 15  
suum ducenta et quadraginta, in latitudinem [millia passuum] centum et octoginta patebant.

## LESSON XV.

1. His rebus adducti, et auctoritate Orgetorigis permoti, constituērunt ea, quae ad proficiscendum pertinerent, comparare; jumentorum et carrorum quam maximum numerum 20  
cedemere; sementes quam maximas facere, ut in itinere copia frumenti suppeteret; cum proximis civitatibus pacem et amicitiam confirmare. Ad eas res conficiendas biennium sibi satis esse duxerunt; in tertium annum profectionem lege confirmant. Ad eas res conficiendas Orgetorix deligitur. Is 25  
sibi legationem ad civitates suscepit: in eo itinere persuadet Castico, Catamantalēdis filio, Sequano, cujus pater regnum in Sequanis multos annos obtinuerat, et a senatu Populi Romani amicus appellatus erat, ut regnum in civitate sua occuparet, quod pater antea habuerat; itemque Dumnorigi Aeduo, fratri 30  
Divitiaci, qui eo tempore principatum in civitate obtinebat, ac maxime plebi acceptus erat, ut idem conareretur, persuadet, eique filiam suam in matrimonium dat. Perfacile factum esse,



illis probat, conāta perficere, propterea quòd ipse suæ civitat̃is imperium obtenturus esset : [probat] non esse dubium, quin totius Galliæ plurimum Helvetii possent : se suis copiis, suoque exercitu, illis regna conciliaturum [esse], confirmat.  
 5 Hâc oratione adducti, inter se fidem et iuramentum dant, et regno occupato, per tres potentissimos ac firmissimos populos totius Galliæ sese potiri posse sperant.

## LESSON XVI.

1. Ea res ut est Helvetiis per indicium enunciata, moribus suis Orgetorigem ex vinculis causam dicere coegerunt :  
 10 [eum] damnatum poenam sequi oportebat, ut igni cremaretur. Die constituta causæ ditionis, Orgetorix ad iudicium omnem suam familiam, ad hominum millia decem, undique coegit, et omnes clientes obæratosque suos, quorum magnum numerum habebat, eodem conduxit : per eos, ne causam diceret, se  
 15 eripuit. Quum civitas, ob eam rem incitata, armis jus suum exsequi conaretur, multitudinemque hominum ex agris magistratus cogèrent, Orgetorix mortuus est : neque abest suspicio, ut Helvetii arbitrantur, quin ipse sibi mortem consciverit.

## LESSON XVII.

1. Post ejus mortem nihilo minus Helvetii id, quod con-  
 20 stituérant, facere conantur, ut e finibus suis exeant. Ubi jam se ad eam rem paratos esse arbitrati sunt, oppida sua omnia, numero ad duodecim [oppida], vicos ad quadringentos, reliqua privata ædificia incendunt ; frumentum omne, præter quod secum portaturi erant, comburunt ; ut, domum reditiōnis  
 25 spe sublata, paratiōres ad omnia pericula subeunda essent : trium mensium molita cibaria sibi quemque domo efferre jubent. Persuadent Rauracis, et Tulingis, et Latobrigis, finitimis, uti, eodem usi consilio, oppidis suis vicisque exustis, una cum iis profiscantur : Boiosque, qui trans Rhenum



incoluērant, et in agrum Noricum transiērant, Noreiamque oppugnārant, receptos ad se, socios sibi adsciscunt.

## LESSON XVIII.

1. Erant omnino itinēra duo, quibus itineribus domo exire possent: unum [iter] per Sequānos, angustum et difficile, inter montem Juram et flumen Rhodānum, vix quā singuli 5 carri ducerentur; mons autem altissimus impendēbat, ut facile perpauci prohibēre possent: altērum [iter] per Provinciam nostram, multo facilius atque expeditius, propterea quod Helvetiōrum inter fines et Allobrogum, qui nuper pacati erant, Rhodānus fluit, isque nonnullis locis vado transitur. 10 Extrēmum oppidum Allobrogum est, proximumque Helvetiōrum finibus, Genēva. Ex eo oppido pons ad Helvetios pertinet. Allobrogibus sese vel persuasūros, quod nondum bono animo in Populum Romānum viderentur, existimābant; vel vi coactūros, ut per suos fines eos ire paterentur. Om- 15 nibus rebus ad profectiōnem comparātis, diem dicunt, quā die ad ripam Rhodāni omnes conveniant: is dies erat ante diem quintum Kalendas Aprilis, Lucio Pisōne, Aulo Gabinio, consulibus.

2. Cæsāri quum id nunciātum esset, eos per Provinciam 20 nostram iter facere, conāri, matūrat ab Urbe proficisci; et, quā maxīmis potest itineribus, in Galliam ulteriorem contendit, et ad Genēvam pervēnit: Provinciæ toti quā maximum potest militum numērum impērat (erat omnino in Galliā ulteriōre legio una): pontem, qui erat ad Genēvam, jubet 25 rescindi. Ubi de ejus adventu Helvetii certiōres facti sunt, legātos ad eum mittunt, nobilissimos civitātis; cujus legationis Nameius et Verudoctius principem locum obtinēbant, qui dicērent, 'Sibi esse in animo, sine ullo maleficio iter per Provinciam facere, propterea quod aliud iter habērent nul- 30 lum: rogāre, ut ejus voluntāte id sibi facere liceat.' Cæsar, quod memoriā tenēbat, L. Cassium consulem occisum, exer-



citumque ejus ab Helvetiis pulsum et sub jugum missum, concedendum non putābat: neque homīnes inimico animo, datā facultāte per Provinciam itinēris faciendi, temperatūros ab injuriā et maleficio existimābat. Tamen, ut spatium intercedere posset, dum milītes, quos imperavērat, convenirent, legātis respondit, ‘Diem se ad deliberandum sumptūrū; si quid vellent, ante diem Idus Aprilis reverterentur.’

## LESSON XIX.

1. Interea eā legiōne, quam secum habēbat, militibusque, qui ex Provinciā convenērant, a lacu Lemanno, qui in flumen  
<sup>10</sup> Rhodānum influit, ad montem Juram, qui fines Sequanōrum ab Helvetiis dividit, millia passuum decem novem murum, in altitudinem pedum sedēcim, fossamque perducit. Eo opēre perfecto, præsidia dispōnit, castella commūnit, quo facilius, si se invito transire conarentur, prohibere possit. Ubi ea dies,  
<sup>15</sup> quam constituērat cum legātis, venit, et legāti ad eum revertērunt, negat ‘se more et exemplo Popūli Romāni posse iter ulli per Provinciam dare; et, si vim facere conentur, prohibitorum ostendit.’ Helvetii, eā spe dejecti, [alii conāti,] navibus junctis ratibusque compluribusque factis, alii vadis  
<sup>20</sup> Rhodāni, quā minīma altitudo fluminis erat, nonnunquam interdiu, sæpius noctu, si perrumpere possent, conāti, opēris [nostri] munitiōne et milītum concursu et telis repulsi, hoc conātu destitērunt.

2. Relinquebātur una per Sequānos via, quā, Sequānis  
<sup>25</sup> invitīs, propter angustias ire non potērant. His quum suā sponte persuadere non possent, legātos ad Dumnorīgem Æduum mittunt, ut eo deprecatore, a Sequānis impetrarent. Dumnōrix gratiā et largitiōne apud Sequānos plurimum potērat, et Helvetiis erat amīcus, quod ex ea civitatē Orge-  
<sup>30</sup> torīgis filiam in matrimonium duxerat, et cupiditatē regni adductus, novīs rebus studēbat, et quā plurimas civitates suo sibi beneficio habere obstrictas volēbat. Itaque rem



suscēpit, et a Sequānis impētrat, ut per fines suos Helvetios ire patiantur, obsidesque uti inter sese dent, perficit: Sequāni [obsīdes dant], ne itinēre Helvetios prohibeant; Helvetiī, ut sine maleficio et injuriā transeant.

## LESSON XX.

1. Cæsāri renunciātur Helvetiis esse in anīmo, per agrum Sequanōrum et Æduōrum iter in Santōnum fines facēre, qui non longe a Tolosatium finibus absunt, quæ civitas est in Provinciā. Id si fiēret, intelligēbat magno cum Provinciæ periculō futūrum [esse], ut [ea] homīnes bellicōsos, Popūli Romāni inimīcos, locis patentibus maximēque frumentariis finitimos habēret. Ob eas causas ei munitiōni, quam fecerat, Titum Labiēnum legātum præfēcit: ipse in Italiam magnis itineribus contendit, duasque ibi legiōnes conscribit, et tres, quæ circum Aquileiam hiemābant, ex hibernis edūcit; et, quæ proximū iter in ulteriōrem Galliam per Alpes erat, cum his quinque legionibus ire contendit. Ibi Centrōnes et Graiocēli et Caturiges, locis superioribus occupātis, itinēre exercitū prohibēre conantur. Compluribus his proeliis pulsīs, ab Ocēlo, quod est citeriōris Provinciæ extrēmum, in fines Vocontiōrum ulteriōris Provinciæ die septīmo pervēnit; inde in Allobrogum fines: ab Allobrogibus in Segusiānos exercitū ducit. Hi sunt extra Provinciam trans Rhodānum primi.

2. Helvetiī jam per angustias et fines Sequanōrum suas copias traduxerant, et in Æduōrum fines pervenerant, eorumque agros populabantur. Ædui, quum se suūque ab iis defendēre non possent, legātos ad Cæsārem mittunt rogātum auxilium: 'Ita se omni tempore de Popūlo Romāno meritos esse, ut, pæne in conspectu exercitus nostri, agri vastari, libēri eorum in servitūtem abdūci, oppīda expugnāri non debuērint.' Eōdem tempore, quō Ædui, Ambarri quoque, necessarii et consanguinei Æduōrum, Cæsārem certiorem fa-



ciunt, sese, depopulātis agris, non facile ab oppīdis vim hostium prohibere : item Allobrōges, qui trans Rhodānum vicos possessionesque habēbant, fugā se ad Cæsārem recipiunt, et demonstrant, sibi, prāter agri solum, nihil esse reliqui. Quibus rebus adductus, Cæsar non expectandum sibi statuit, dum, omnibus fortunīs sociōrum consumptis, in Santōnes Helvetiī pervenirent.

## LESSON XXI.

1. Flumen est Arar, quod per fines Æduōrum et Sequanōrum in Rhodānum influit incredibili lenitāte, ita ut oculīs, in utram partem fluat, iudicāri non possit. Id Helvetiī ratibus ac lintribus junctis transibant. Ubi per exploratōres Cæsar certior factus est, tres jam copiārum partes Helvetios id flumen traduxisse, quartam verō partem citra flumen Arārim reliquam esse ; de tertiā vigiliā cum legionibus tribus e castris profectus, ad eam partem pervēnit, quæ nondum flumen transierat. Eos impeditos et inopinantes aggressus, magnam eōrum partem concidit : reliqui fugæ sese mandārunt, atque in proximās sylvas abdidērunt. Is pagus appellabātur Tigrinus : nam omnis civitas Helvetia in quatuor pagos divisa est. Hic pagus unus, quum domo exisset, patrum nostrōrum memoriā L. Cassium consulem interfecerat, et ejus exercitum sub jugum miserat. Ita, sive casu, sive consilio Deōrum immortalium, quæ pars civitātis Helvetiæ insignem calamitatem Popūlo Romāno intulerat, ea princeps pœnas persolvit. Quā in re Cæsar non solūm publicas, sed etiam privātas injurias ultus est, quod ejus socēri L. Pisōnis avum, L. Pisōnem legātum, Tigurini eodem proelio, quo Cassium, interfecerant.

2. Hoc proelio facto, reliquas copias Helvetiōrum ut consequi posset, pontem in Arāre faciendum curat, atque ita exercitum transducit. Helvetiī, repentino ejus adventu commōti, quum id, quod ipsi diēbus viginti ægerrime confecerant, ut flumen transirent, uno illum die fecisse intelligērent, legā-



tos ad eum mittunt : cujus legatiōnis Divīco princeps fuit, qui bello Cassiāno dux Helvetiōrum fuērat. Is ita cum Cæsāre agit : ‘ si pacem Popūlus Romānus cum Helvetiis faceret, in eam partem itūros atque ibi futūros Helvetios, ubi eos Cæsar constituisset atque esse voluisset : sin bello persēqui perseve-  
rāret, reminiscerētur et. vetēris incommōdi Popūli Romāni et pristīnæ virtūtis Helvetiōrum. Quòd improvīsò unum pagum adortus esset, quum ii, qui flumen transissent, suis auxilium ferre non possent, ne ob eam rem aut suæ magno opère virtūti tribuēret, aut ipsos despicēret : se ita a patrīb<sup>us</sup> majoribusque suis didicisse, ut magis virtūte, quàm dolo aut insidiis, niterentur. Quare ne committēret, ut is locus, ubi constitissent, ex calamitāte Popūli Romāni et interneciōne exercītūs nomen capēret, aut memoriam prodēret.’

## LESSON XXII.

1. His Cæsar ita respondit : ‘ Eo sibi minus dubitatiōnis<sup>15</sup> dari, quòd eas res, quas legāti Helvetii commemorāssent, memoriā tenēret ; atque eo gravius ferre, quo minus merīto Popūli Romāni accidissent : qui si alicujus injuriæ sibi conscius fuisset, non fuisse difficīle cavēre ; sed eo deceptum, quòd neque commissum a se intelligēret, quare timēret ; neque sine<sup>20</sup> causā timendum putāret. Quod si vetēris contumeliæ oblivisci vellet, num etiam recentium injuriarum, quòd eo invīto, iter per Provinciam per vim tentāssent, quòd Æduos, quòd Ambarros, quòd Allobrōges vexāssent, memoriam deponēre posse ? Quòd suā victoriā tam insolenter glorientur, quòdque<sup>25</sup> tam diu se impūne tulisse injurias admirarentur, eōdem pertinēre ; consuēsse enim Deos immortāles, quò gravius homīnes ex commutatiōne rerum doleant, quos pro scelēre eōrum ulcisci velint, his secundiōres interdum res et diurniōrem impunitātem concedēre. Quum ea ita sint, tamen, si obsīdes<sup>30</sup> ab iis sibi dentur, uti ea, quæ polliceantur, factūros intelligat ; et si Æduis de injuriis, quas ipsis sociisque eōrum intulērint, item si Allobrogibus satisfaciant, sese cum iis pacem esse



factūrum.' Divico respondit: 'Ita Helvetios a majoribus suis institutos esse, uti obsides accipere, non dare, consuērint: ejus rei Populum Romanum esse testem.'

2. Hoc responso dato, discessit. Postero die castra ex eo  
 5 loco movent: idem facit Cæsar; equitatumque omnem, ad  
 numerum quatuor millium, quem ex omni Provinciâ et Æduis  
 atque eorum sociis coactum habebat, præmittit, qui videant,  
 quas in partes hostes iter faciunt. Qui, cupidius novissimum  
 agmen insecuti, alieno loco cum equitatu Helvetiorum præ-  
 10 lium committunt: et pauci de nostris cadunt. Quo prælio  
 sublâti Helvetii, quod quingentis equitibus tantam multitudi-  
 nem equitum propulserant, audacius subsistere, nonnunquam  
 ex novissimo agmine prælio nostros lacessere, cœperunt.  
 Cæsar suos a prælio continēbat, ac satis habebat in præsentia  
 15 hostem rapinis, pabulationibus, populationibusque prohibere.  
 Ita dies circiter quindēcim iter fecerunt, uti inter novissimum  
 hostium agmen, et nostrum primum, non amplius quinque aut  
 senis millibus passuum interesset.

### LESSON XXIII.

1. Intērim quotidie Cæsar Æduos frumentum, quod essent  
 20 publice polliciti, flagitare: nam propter frigora, quod Gallia  
 sub septentrionibus, ut antè dictum est, posita est, non modò  
 frumenta in agris matūra non erant, sed ne pabuli quidem satis  
 magna copia suppetēbat: eo autem frumento, quod flumine  
 Arari navibus subvexerat, propterea minus uti poterat, quòd  
 25 iter ab Arare Helvetii avertērant, a quibus discedere nolēbat.  
 Diem ex die ducere Ædui; conferri, comportari, adesse,  
 dicere. Ubi se diutius duci intellexit, et diem instare, quo  
 die frumentum militibus metiri oportēret, convocatis eorum  
 principibus, quorum magnam copiam in castris habebat, in his  
 30 Divitiaco et Lisco, qui summo magistratū præerat (quem  
 Vergobretum appellant Ædui, qui creatur annuus, et vitæ  
 necisque in suos habet potestatem), graviter eos accusat,



quòd, quum neque emi, neque ex agris sumi posset, tam necessario tempore, tam propinquis hostibus, ab iis non sublevetur: præsertim quum, magnâ ex parte eorum precibus adductus, bellum suscepit; multo etiam gravius, quòd sit destitutus, queritur.

5

2. Tum demum Liscus, oratione Cæsaris adductus, quod antea tacuerat, proponit: 'Esse nonnullos, quorum auctoritas apud plebem plurimum valeat; qui privati plus possint, quam ipsi magistratus. Hos seditiosâ atque improbâ oratione multitudinem deterrere, ne frumentum conferant, quod præstare 10 debeant. Si jam principatum Galliæ obtinere non possint, Gallorum, quam Romanorum, imperia perferre satius esse; neque dubitare debere, quin, si Helvetios superaverint Romani, unâ cum reliquâ Galliâ Æduis libertatem sint erepturi. Ab iisdem nostra consilia, quæque in castris gerantur, hostibus 15 enunciari: hos a se coerceri non posse: quin etiam, quòd necessario rem Cæsari enunciarit, intelligere sese, quanto id cum periculo fecerit, et ob eam causam, quam diu potuerit, tacuisse.'

## LESSON XXIV.

1. Cæsar hâc oratione Lisci Dumnorigem, Divitiaci fratrem, designari sentiebat: sed, quòd pluribus presentibus eas res jactari nolêbat, celeriter concilium dimittit, Liscum retinet: quærit ex solo ea, quæ in conventu dixerat. Dicit liberiùs atque audaciùs. Eadem secretò ab aliis quærit; repertit esse vera: 'Ipsam esse Dumnorigem summâ audaciâ, 25 magnâ apud plebem propter liberalitatem gratiâ, cupidumque rerum novarum: complures annos portoria, reliquæque omnia Æduorum vectigalia, parvo pretio redempta habere, propterea quòd, illo licente, contrâ liceri audeat nemo. His rebus et suam rem familiarem auxisse, et facultates ad largiendum 30 magnas comparasse: magnum numerum equitatus suo sumptu semper alere et circum se habere: neque solum domi, sed etiam apud finitimas civitates largiter posse: atque



hujus potentiæ causâ matrem in Biturigibus homîni illic nobilissîmo ac potentissîmo collocâsse : ipsum ex Helvetiis uxorem habere : sororem ex matre et propinquas suas nuptum in alias civitatés collocâsse : favere et cupere Helvetiis propter eam  
 5 affinitatem : odisse etiam suo nomîne Cæsarem et Românos, quod eorum adventu potentia ejus diminûta, et Divitiâcus frater in antiquum locum gratiæ atque honoris sit restitutus. Si quid accidat Românis, summam in spem regni per Helvetios obtinendi venire ; imperio Populi Români non modò de  
 10 regno, sed etiam de eâ, quam habeat, gratiâ desperare.' Reperiēbat etiam, in quærendo Cæsar quod prælium equestre adversum paucis antè diēbus esset factum, initium ejus fugæ factum a Dumnorige atque ejus equitibus, (nam equitatu, quem auxilio Cæsari Ædui miserant, Dumnōrix præerat),  
 15 eorum fugâ reliquum esse equitatum perterritum.

## LESSON XXV.

1. Quibus rebus cognitis, quum ad has suspiciones certissimæ res accederent, quod per fines Sequanorum Helvetios traduxisset, quod obsides inter eos dandos curâset, quod ea omnia, non modò injussu suo et civitatis, sed etiam inscientibus  
 20 ipsis fecisset, quod a magistratu Æduorum accusaretur ; satis esse causæ arbitrabatur, quare in eum aut ipse animadverteret, aut civitatem animadvertere juberet. His omnibus rebus unum repugnabat, quod Divitiaci fratris summum in Populum Romanum studium, summam in se voluntatem,  
 25 egregiam fidem, justitiam, temperantiam cognoverat : nam, ne ejus supplicio Divitiaci animum offenderet, verebatur. Itaque, priusquam quidquam conaretur, Divitiacum ad se vocari jubet ; et, quotidianis interpretibus remotis, per C. Valerium Procillum, principem Galliæ provinciæ, familiarem suum, cui  
 30 summam omnium rerum fidem habebat, cum eo colloquitur : simul commonefacit, quæ, ipso præsentē, in consilio Gallorum de Dumnorige sint dicta, et ostendit, quæ separatim quisque de eo apud se dixerit : petit atque hortatur, ut, sine ejus



offensione animi vel ipse de eo, causâ cognitâ, statuât, vel civitatem statuere jubeat.

2. Divitiacus multis cum lachrymis, Cæsarem complexus, obsecrare cœpit, 'Ne quid gravius in fratrem statueret: scire se illa esse vera; nec quenquam ex eo plus, quàm se, doloris capere, propterea quòd, quum ipse gratiâ plurimum domi atque in reliquâ Galliâ, ille minimûm propter adolescentiam posset, per se crevisset: quibus opibus ac nervis, non solûm ad minuendam gratiam, sed pæne ad perniciem suam uteretur: sese tamen et amore fraterno et existimatione vulgi commoveri. Quòd si quid ei a Cæsare gravius accidisset, quum ipse eum locum amicitiae apud eum teneret, neminem existimaturum, non suâ voluntate factum: quâ ex re futurum, uti totius Galliæ animi a se averterentur.' Hæc quum pluribus verbis flens a Cæsare peteret, Cæsar ejus dextram prendit: consolatus rogat, finem orandi faciat: tanti ejus apud se gratiam esse ostendit, uti et Reipublicæ injuriam et suum dolorem ejus voluntati ac precibus condonet. Dumnorigem ad se vocat; fratrem adhibet; quæ in eo reprehendat, ostendit; quæ ipse intelligat, quæ civitas queratur, proponit: monet, ut in reliquum tempus omnes suspensiones vitet; præterita se Divitiaco fratri condonare dicit. Dumnorigi custodes ponit, ut, quæ agat, quibuscum loquatur, scire possit.



# EXERCISES

IN

ENGLISH TO BE TURNED INTO LATIN.

---

## I.

1. [a. v.] I; we; they; he; thou; ye; it; they; you; he.  
[p. v.] we; he; thou; ye; they; I; you; he; we; she.

2. [a. v.] (ā) I am; he is; we are; she is; thou art;  
ye are. (ē) we are; he is; thou art; it is; ye are.  
5 (ī, u) I am.

[p. v.] (a) he is; we are; they are; ye are; thou art. (ī) he  
is; they are, ye are, (ē) thou art; you are; it is.

3. [a. v.] (ā) he was; thou wert; ye were; we were;  
it was. (ē) we were; he was; ye were; thou wert; I was.  
10 (i) I was; he was; they were; we were; thou wert; ye  
were.

[p. v.] (ā) I was; he was; we were; thou wert; ye  
were. (ē) they were; we were; he was. (ī, ē) thou wert;  
you were. (i) I was; thou wert; ye were; he was; we  
15 were.

4. [a. v.] (abi) I shall; thou wilt; he will; they will;  
we shall. (ebi) we shall; thou wilt; he will; ye will; it  
will; you will. ((a) e) I shall; we shall; he will; thou wilt;  
ye will. ((ia) ie) we shall; they will; ye will; he will; thou  
20 wilt; it will.



[p. v.] (ābi) I shall; we shall; it will; they will; he will. (ebi) we shall; they will; he will; it will. (ē) I shall; we shall; he will; ye will; they will. (iē) ye will; I shall; he will; ye will; she will; it will.

## II.

*He is giving. She is given. I was giving a field. I will give the wagons. The wagons will be given. They divide. Ye were dividing. We will divide. The fields are divided. The war is carried on. He carries on the war. They were waging war. Ye will wage war. The daughter is given in marriage. The castles are fortified. We fortify the province. The province will be fortified. The Rhine divides the province of Gaul. The place is called Gaul. For the empire of the Gauls. He gives to his daughter a number of wagons and packhorses. The Gauls are divided on account of the war.*

15

## III.

*He was engaging in a great battle. Many villages will seek aid. A great number of Roman people are wounded. The wagons were having many wheels. All Gaul is fortified. One field is divided. The Gauls were carrying on war in our province. Large wheels. Many packhorses. Many Romans were wounded by the Gauls.*

## IV.

*They are singing; you are calling; I am giving. Those friends were pleasing me, these displeasing. They are called Germans, we, Romans. They were carrying on war together. He will give him his daughter in marriage. That man is happy who governs his life by good precepts. He was judg-*



ing himself worthy of custody. That boy of *yours* is industrious. Oaths were mutually pledged. Even in that camp which was across *the* Rhine.

## V.

*He* turns *his* journey from *the* Alps. Many of *the* plebeians were displeased. All *the* leaders of *the* Helvetians were very brave. Cæsar places a guard over Orgetorix. *The* Sequani lead all their forces across *the* river Rhine. Three very brave soldiers of Cæsar are wounded. Cæsar sent his lieutenant, a most brave man. Dumnorix was summoned by Cæsar. This bridge extends across *the* Rhine to *the* Ædui, who are a very brave people. On account of *the* cold, *the* Helvetii now seek *their* camp. Our *soldiers* contend with Ariovistus in an equestrian battle. Ariovistus collects all his own forces, and leads them across *the* river Arar to *the* nearest town.

## VI.

*The* senate was watching Catiline most sharply, day and night. *The* Helvetii most speedily announce this thing to Cæsar. Liscus is retained in *the* council three days by Cæsar. This council was more acceptable to Cæsar than that. *The* soldiers of Cæsar were far *the* best.

## VII.

He commanded all *the* soldiers, and they had assembled. Casticus persuaded his father, who was far *the* bravest man among *the* Sequani. *The* father of Casticus had obtained *the* kingdom. *He* had given *his* daughter in marriage. *They* have carried on war across *the* Garonne, in Gaul. Our men wounded very many Gauls. Cæsar abstained from battle



that day, and indulged *the* soldiers. Catiline had made *a* conspiracy *at* Rome. I shall have led *the* army across *the* Alps.

## VIII.

*Let the* castles be fortified. He commands *the* soldiers to fortify *the* camp. He undertook *the* enterprise, that *he* might obtain leave of Cæsar to pass through *the* boundaries of *the* Sequanians. Let *the* good be separated from *the* wicked. He was fearing that *he* should not have aid enough. Ambassadors are sent to Rome to announce these *things*. If Cæsar is commanding *the* army, *it* is well. If Cæsar may <sup>10</sup> have *an* army with him, *he* will certainly come. If Cæsar shall have *an* army with him, *he* will quickly come. Had Cæsar had *an* army with him, *he* would quickly have come.

## IX.

Give me your daughter in marriage. Let *us* give our daughters in marriage. Let *him* not join battle. Citizens, <sup>15</sup> deliver up *the* fugitives to *the* enemy. Being called upon, they began to cry out. They answered that *they* were displeased. He sent ambassadors to ask aid. We must live with our enemies, or conquer them. Having accomplished this enterprise, Cæsar commanded his soldiers to seek their <sup>20</sup> camp. The legates answered that they would take time for deliberation. They said that they were prepared to wage war upon the Tulingi. Cæsar said that he had often led *his* army across *the* Alps. Crying aloud, he began to join battle with *the* enemy.

25

## X.

*The* Helvetii were wishing to depart *out of* their own territory, and persuaded *the* nobility to make *a* conspiracy.



This took place *the easier on this account*. Each one was bearing *from* home ground provisions *during* three months. Cæsar, having disposed his guards and finished the fortification, could easily prevent them. It was announced to *the* Helvetii that Cæsar intended to prohibit them *from* their journey, which *he* could easily do. *For* these reasons it happened that *the* Ædui could not defend themselves from *the* Helvetii.

## XI.

The Belgians, Aquitanians, and Celts divide between them all Gaul in three parts, whose language, customs, and laws differ from one another. We call those Gauls, who in their own language are called Celts. The Gauls are divided from the Aquitanians by the river Garonne, and from the Belgians by the rivers, Marne and Seine.

## XII.

15 The Aquitanians and Celts are brave; but the Belgians are much braver than they. Those living farthest from the Roman Province, and nearest the Germans, are the bravest of all. On this account it happens that the Helvetii also are very brave, and excel the Aquitanians and Celts in valor,  
20 who are farther from the Germans.

## XIII.

The Gauls were possessing that part which, it is said, takes its rise from the river Rhine: they are called in their own language Celts. The river Garonne, the ocean, and the country of the Belgæ bound this part, which touches also  
25 upon the Sequanians and Helvetians near the river Rhine. It is said that the Belgians took their rise from the bounda-



ries of the Gauls, and extend to the river Rhine, which looks toward the north and the west. Aquitania is bounded by the river Garonne, the Pyrenees Mountains, and the ocean, which is next to Spain.

## XIV.

During the consulship of Cæsar and Crassus, Orgetōrix was more noble and wealthy than all the Helvetians. He was led by his ambition for empire to make a conspiracy; and he persuaded the nobility and the state to leave their country, saying that they excelled all the Gauls in valor. He said, moreover, that it was easy for the Helvetians to get possession of all Gaul. On account of their position, the Helvetians were able to wander less widely abroad than their neighbors. The river Rhine was restraining them on one side, Mount Jura, on another, and Lake Geneva, on a third. For these reasons, it happened that, being desirous of carrying on war, they were greatly troubled.

## XV.

These reasons, and the authority of Orgetorix, induced the Helvetians to prepare for their departure. They persuaded the people to buy as many packhorses and wagons as possible, and to make as extensive sowings as possible, also to make an alliance with their neighbors. For the accomplishment of these things, they selected Orgetorix, and gave him the embassy to the states. He persuaded the father of Casticus, a Sequanian, who had for many years taken upon himself the chief authority in the state, to give him a pledge of fidelity and an oath. He promises also to give to Dumnorix, the Æduan, his daughter in marriage.



## XVI.

This thing displeased the Helvetians; for it was announced to them, that Orgetorix had it in mind to take upon himself the chief authority in the state. According to their customs, he was compelled to plead his cause in chains, and they commanded him, if condemned, to be burned. But Orgetorix had a great family of *slaves*, dependants, and debtors, to the number of a thousand men: all these he had brought together to this trial, to rescue him from his chains, and that he might not plead his cause. Soon after, Orgetorix died.

## XVII.

The Helvetians were striving none the less to depart, after Orgetorix' death. They thought it easy to be accomplished. In preparing for this, they supposed two years would be enough. They resolved to burn down all their walled towns, to the number of twenty, and promise to burn up all their grain, except ground provisions for three months, which each one was ordered to carry forth for himself. The Rauracians and Tulingians adopt the same plan, burn their towns and villages, and prepare to depart with them.

## XVIII.

Already did the Helvetians and their friends think themselves prepared to go forth from their country: they had only two routes by which they could do this, the one, through high mountains and over deep rivers, the other, through the Roman Province, much easier and more expeditious, because it was said that the Rhine was sometimes forded, and that a bridge extended from the Helvetians to the Allobroges in the Province. The Allobroges had just been subdued by the



Romans, and were not yet well disposed to them. Having made every preparation for a departure through them, they sent ambassadors to the Rauracians and Tulingians to persuade them to go out with them. Cæsar was at this time at Rome. When the departure of the Helvetians through the Roman Province was announced to him, he hastened to collect together the largest number of soldiers possible, and to leave the city to proceed into farther Gaul.

## XIX.

On the twenty-third of March, Cæsar, with two legions of soldiers, arrived at Geneva. The bridge, which extended from the Allobroges to the Helvetians, was torn down by Cæsar's orders. A wall also was extended from Lake Geneva to Mount Jura, a distance of ten miles, ten feet in height, and six in breadth. When the ambassadors of the Helvetians were come to him, at the appointed time, he said that the customs and usages of the Roman People would prevent him, if he should wish to give them a pass through the Province. There being only one way left them, through the Sequanians, ambassadors are despatched to them. Of these, Dumnorix was by far the most powerful and wealthy.

## XX.

Cæsar was informed that the Sequanians and Helvetians had given mutual pledges of fidelity, the Sequanians, to allow the Helvetians to pass through their boundaries, the Helvetians, to do this without harm. For this reason, he left Titus Labienus at Geneva, and proceeded himself with the longest marches possible to Rome, to enroll soldiers for his army. When he had enrolled two legions, and led out one legion from their winter quarters, he attempted to lead them across the Alps, because it was the nearest route into farther Gaul ;



but the enemy, having occupied the mountains with large forces of soldiers, joined battle with him in the mountain defiles. These, after many battles, were repulsed by Cæsar, and put to flight. On the eighth day of April, he came into the Province.

## XXI.

The Ædui send ambassadors to the Allobroges, their neighbors, to ask aid, saying that they could not defend themselves nor their possessions from the Helvetians; that their children were led away into servitude, and their towns  
10 were blockaded. When the Allobroges were assured that the Helvetians had betaken themselves to the river Arar, they made rafts and joined together boats, and, having crossed the river, came to Cæsar, and showed him that the Ædui had nothing left them but exile and flight. Cæsar, having heard  
15 this, determined that he ought not to wait until the fortunes of his allies were entirely lost. He determined to wage war upon the Helvetians suddenly, before they had transported their forces across the river. Therefore he led out three legions from his camp, and, having occupied a favorable position, he assailed them when they were crossing the river. A  
20 fourth part of their whole number were cut to pieces by our men.

## XXII.

The rest of the forces of the Helvetians had crossed the Arar into the country of the Ædui and the Sequanians.  
25 Therefore, that he might the easier cross the river, he commands his soldiers to make a bridge upon the Arar; which they did in a single day. When it was announced to the Helvetians that Cæsar had it in mind to cross the river and pursue them, they were greatly excited, and sent Divico as  
30 an ambassador to him. He led the Helvetians to battle when Lucius Cassius, the Roman consul, was slain, and his army



sent beneath the yoke. He said that the Helvetians were wishing to make peace with the Romans and return home. Cæsar answered him, that he remembered the signal calamity which he had brought upon the Roman People in the war with Cassius : he thought that peace should not be granted <sup>5</sup> them, but he would take care that they should suffer the punishment of their deeds. Cæsar also commands Divico to give him hostages, so that he might know whether he would perform what he had promised. The Helvetians, said Divico, are accustomed to receive hostages, not to give them. <sup>10</sup>

### XXIII.

Divico, having given this answer, departed to the camp of the Helvetians. Both armies, having removed their camp, began to prepare to make battle upon each other. Cæsar placed T. Labienus over all the cavalry, numbering two thousand, collected from the Province and all his allies, and <sup>15</sup> commanded him to see in what direction the enemy should proceed. He did as he was commanded, but pursued the enemy's rear too eagerly. The Helvetian cavalry engaged him in battle, in a position unfavorable to Labienus, and slew many of our soldiers. Having repulsed so great a number <sup>20</sup> of Roman cavalry with only a few Helvetian knights, they took a much bolder stand, and often harassed our men in the rear. Cæsar commanded Labienus to restrain his men from battle, and only, for the present, to prevent them from plunder and laying waste the country. <sup>25</sup>

### XXIV.

In the mean time, the Helvetians turn their course from the river Arar, and make a journey of ten days into the country of the Ædui. Cæsar continued to follow them with long marches, so that there were only three or four miles



between the two armies. But a sufficient quantity, neither of provisions nor forage, was supplied. Cæsar, having called together the principal men of the Ædui, complains that the supplies, which they had promised on the public trust, were  
5 not at hand: he said that he was unwilling to depart from the Helvetians, with whom he had undertaken the war in a great measure on their account; that at so important a time, when the enemy was so near, he could not longer be put off. The Ædui, after hearing the address of Cæsar, replied that they  
10 would take time for deliberation.

## XXV.

Yet Liscus, the chief magistrate of the Ædui, came to Cæsar on the twenty-fifth day of May, and in tears besought him not to decide any thing too severe against his people; that there were some private persons of more authority among  
15 the common people than the magistrates themselves, who hated the very name of Cæsar and the Romans, and that they had prevented the people from bringing in the provisions. It was announced to Cæsar that Liscus, in his address, designated Dumnorix, the brother of Divitiacus, as the cause of  
20 the difficulty. He learned from others also, that this same Dumnorix was a man of great daring, and unbounded popularity among the people. Whatever Cæsar thought easy to be done by him, he thought should be done by himself. He therefore sent Divitiacus to admonish him that he understood  
25 what he was doing.



# NOTES.

## I.

Page

1. [a. Learn the English method of pronouncing Latin. ¶ 3; §§ 6—23.

b. Pronounce the Latin in ¶ 3. 4. (a.), and give the rules for division of syllables, and the sounds of the vowels and consonants. Divide into syllables also the examples in ¶ 3. 4. (b.), giving carefully the rules found in the sections referred to in the Grammar.

REMARK. It is earnestly recommended to spend some ten minutes, at least, at the commencement of each recitation, in exact pronunciation and a rigid analysis, according to the rules for accentuation, division of syllables, &c., till every part of the subject shall be perfectly understood. In early practice, let *principles* be quoted *verbatim* and *frequently*, till very familiar.

c. Learn the general description of the *Verb*, and the general principles of *conjugation*: §§ 140—150.

NOTE. In distinguishing different kinds of verbs, the terms *transitive* and *intransitive* are decidedly preferred, instead of *active* and *neuter*, which are liable to fundamental objections.

d. Learn particularly the *personal terminations* of the verb: § 147. 3. ¶ 12. 1. Distinguish the *personal*, *plural*, and *passive signs*, and the mode of forming the plural, active and passive, of each person: ¶ 12. 1., Rem. What is there peculiar in the second person plural, passive? Are these terminations *nude* or *euphonic*?

1. Line 1. *M, s, mus, &c.*; (translate), *I, thou, we, &c.*; or suppose them the endings of specific verbs, as in English, *to love, to admonish, &c.*, then translate *m, s, &c., I love, or am loving, thou art admonishing, &c.*, [the teacher giving the English verb, and designating the mode and tense.]

1. [p. 20.] L. 1. *I, we, &c.*; (translate), *m, mus, &c.*, or with the [p. v.] (passive voice) *r, mur, &c.* Let the teacher here also designate some specific English verb, together with the *voice* to be used; as, *I am loving, they are loved; m, ntur, &c.*

[e. Learn the euphonic affixes of the verb in all the conjugations, and both voices, of the present tense: § 152. ¶ 11. (b.). How do these differ from the *nude* affixes already learned? What is this euphonic vowel called? § 150. 5. How are verbs usually divided



Page

1. by grammarians into different conjugations? §§ 149. 2; 150. 5; ¶ 12. II. In which conjugations is the connecting vowel nearly uniform, and in which does it fluctuate? Point out the variations and peculiarities of the connecting vowels, as noted in ¶ 12. II. Rem. 1—3.]

2. L. 4. **O, at, amus, &c., I, he, we, &c.,** or [assuming, as before, some specific verb], *I love, or am loving, he is loving, &c.*

2. [p. 20.] L. 3. [a. v.] (*ā*); i. e. active voice, with the connecting vowel *ā*. Supply English verbs, and translate as before.

[f. Learn the euphonic affixes of the imperfect indicative, both voices: § 152; ¶ 11. (b.). How do these differ from the affixes of the present tense? What may we call the inserted letters, *ba*? ¶ 13. 2. Is this uniform in this mode and tense? Is the imperfect a *definite* or *indefinite* tense (i. e. representing the action as *doing at the time, or done in the time*)? [See Crosby's Greek Grammar, § 168.] By what form of the English verb should it then usually be translated?]

3. L. 8. **Abam, abant, . . . ebāmur, &c., I was [loving], they were [loving], we were [admonished], &c.** Analyze the several examples into their elements; as, connective, tense, personal, plural, and passive signs: ¶ 13. 1—3; ¶ 19.

3. [p. 20.] L. 8. [a. v.] (*ā*). **He was [loving], then wert [loving], &c., abat, abas, &c.**

[g. Learn the euphonic affixes of the future indicative, active and passive. Distinguish between the present and future; between the imperfect and future. What is the tense sign of the first and second conjugations? ¶ 13. 2. What takes the place of this in the third and fourth conjugations? In what two ways may the future indicative be translated into English? Which is the definite, and which the indefinite?]

4. L. 11. Translate and analyze as in the preceding sections; so in the corresponding English.

NOTE. These exercises should be varied and repeated much beyond what is here given.

## II.

[a. Conjugate (i. e. give the principal parts: § 151. 4) *amo, moneo, rego, and audio*, and inflect (i. e. give the several persons and numbers) the present, imperfect, and future tenses, indicative, both voices: §§ 155—158. 160. Distinguish the three roots [or bases] of each verb, and tell how found from the principal parts: § 150. 1—4. (cf. ¶¶ 14. 15. 1. 2. 3.) Why are these verbs classed under different conjugations? § 149. 2. Why are they essentially one? Ans. *They differ only in the connecting vowel.* In which does the connective fluctuate?]

1. L. 15. **Das**; conjugate, distinguish the root, connec-



Page

1. tive, personal sign; so in each of the other forms: Ascertain in the Vocabulary the meaning of *do*: Translate each form by the signification of the root, and the signification of the elements of the affix; as, **das** — root, *d* [give]; *a*, connective; *s*, personal sign [thou] [thou, give], *thou art giving*. **Dantur** — root, *d* [give]; *a*, connective; *n*, plu. sign, which with *t*, per. sign [they]; *u*, euphon.; *r*, pass. sign [given]; i. e. always rendered by the perfect passive participle of the verb denoted by the root] [they, given], *they are given*. **Dabat** — root, *d* [give]; *a*, connective; *ba*, tense sign [was]; *t*, per. sign [he] [he, was, give], *he was giving*. — 16. **Dabitur** — root, *d* [give]; *a*, connective; *bi*, tense sign [will]; *t*, per. sign [he]; *u*, euphon.; *r*, pass. sign [given] [he, will, given], *he will be given*. So proceed with the other forms of the section till this mode of translating is familiar.

[b. Learn the general definitions of Etymology, the distinctions of the Noun, and the general principles of Declension: §§ 24. 25. 35—38. 40.

c. Learn the endings of the First and Second Declension: § 39. ¶ 4: classify those that are alike: ¶¶ 4. II. (a.), 5: compare the two, and point out the difference in connecting vowels and case affixes: ¶ 4. II. In which is the connective regular? in which fluctuating? (cf. the third conjugation of verbs.)

d. Learn § 41. and the paradigm *musa*. Distinguish the root, connective, and affixes of each case, and the English translation.

e. Learn ¶ 23. (A.). In *musa*, which cases are *direct*? which *indirect*? Which are *subjective*, and which *objective*? Which are translated into English by prepositions, the direct or indirect? What may then be taken as the signs of the indirect cases? Ans. *Of*, the *gen.*; *to* or *for*, the *dat.*; *from*, *with*, &c., the *ab*. What is the sign of the *voc*.?

f. Learn § 46. and the paradigms *dominus*, *gener*, *ager*, *regnum*. Distinguish, as in *musa*. How does *dominus* differ from *gener* and *ager*? How do *gener* and *ager* differ from each other? (§§ 47. 48.) Why do they not form the nominative in *s*? ¶ 9. I., Rem. 1. Classify according to ¶ 4. (a.), and examples, ¶ 5.]

2. 2. L. 5. **Filiam**; what is the root? What the affix? What case? How denoted by the form? What then does the letter *m*, as an affix of declension, denote? What relation to *dat*? Parse it by synopsis, ¶ 24. (a.); so *dat*, ¶ 24. (d.). Rule for *filiam*? R. 29. § 229; for *dat*, R. 9. (b.), § 209. (b.). — **Galli**; what is the affix? The affix *i*, of the second decl., is common to what three different cases or relations? How shall the given relation be determined? Is *Galli* here subject or predicate? R. 10. § 210. What is the subject of *appellantur*? R. 9. Rem. 1. (a.). — 6. **Bellum gerunt**; what is the common position of the Latin accus. with respect



Page

2. to the verb? § 279. 2. (b.). — **Galliæ**; R. 11. § 211. (For its position, see § 279. 10. (a.), Rem.) — **Imperium**; ¶ 23. II. — **Pro gloriâ belli**; *for the glory of war*. **Pro** parsed according to Synop. ¶ 24. (f.), R. ¶ 23. xxxv.

NOTE. The relation of a preposition should be traced to its *primary meaning*; as *pro* primarily means *before, in front of*, it denotes the relation of *place in which*, and governs the ab. accordingly.

L. 7. **Gloriâ**; R. 41. § 241; ¶ 23. xxv. — **Jumentōrum et, &c**; does *et* here connect *sentences* or *like parts* of a sentence? R. 78. § 278. (cf. ¶ 23. xxxvi.) — 8. **Trans Rhenum**; *trans*, [primary meaning, *across to*, as with a verb of motion; the relation, *person or place to which*; ¶ 23. xvi.] *across the Rhine*: **Rhenum**, R. 35. (1.), § 235. (1.). — **In matrimonium**; *in* [primary meaning, *person or place to which*, or *place in which*; hence it is either followed by the acc. or ab.; here it denotes the relation of *place to which*, ¶ 23. xvi.], ¶ 23. xxxv.: **matrimonium**, R. 35. (2.), § 235. (2.). — 9. **Naturâ loci**; *naturâ*, R. 47. § 247. 3; *loci*, § 92. 2. (For *position* of words, consult continually § 279.)

REMARK. Too much care cannot be taken, at first, in the distinction and meaning of *endings*, or the *formative* part of Latin words; in tracing prepositions to their *primary meanings*; and in distinguishing the *relations* marked by prepositions and conjunctions.

[P. 21.] L. 5. **He is giving, dat.** Why should the pronominal subject not be expressed in this and similar cases? § 209. Rem. 1. (a.). — **I was giving a field, agrum dabam.** What English words should not be expressed in Latin? Give the rule for the position of words in Latin construction: § 279. 1. 2. (a.), (b.), (c.), &c. — 11. **The Rhine . . . of Gaul, Rhenus Galliæ provinciam dividit.** Give the rule for the position of each word. — 13. **He gives to his daughter, &c., filiæ carrōrum et jumentōrum numērum dat.** In what case is *filiæ*? R. 23. § 223.

### III.

1. L. 11. **Committit**; give the parts [conjugate] — *committo, mittere, misi, missus*; compounded of *con* and *mitto*; roots, *committ, commis, commiss*; formed from the root *committ* by affixing *it*; found in the *present, indicative, active*; [inflected] *committo, committis, committit*; in the *third person singular, to agree with a pronoun implied by the personal affix*; R. 9. (b.). So analyze and parse the remaining ex-



Page

2. amples of this section; for the mode of translating by the elements of the affix, see notes on Lesson II.

[a. Learn the declension of Adjectives of the First and Second Declension: § 104—107: and the paradigms *bonus, tener, piger, unus*, and others like them; (see ¶¶ 4 (a.), 8.) Distinguish the agreement with the declension of nouns.]

2. L. 21. *Aliēno . . . committunt, they join battle in an unfavorable place.* How is the object of this sentence indicated? What is then the direct object? What adjunct has the verb? What does the adjunct denote in reference to the verb? Ans. *It denotes the place where:* R. 54. Rem. 2. (b.); [¶ 23. xxv.]; *aliēno*, R. 5. Parse *alieno* according to Synopsis, ¶ 24. (b.). — 22. *In populum Romanorum*; compare the position of the adjective in this sentence with the preceding; § 279. 7. (a.); *in, among* [to the midst]. — *Multis cum lacrymis*; notice the arrangement; *lacrymis*, R. 49. III. — 23. *In . . . Galliā, in the rest of Gaul*; R. 5. Rem. 17; *Galliā*, R. 35. (2.). — *Animi*; R. 9. (a.). — 24. *Nostros expectābat, &c., he was waiting for our [men], and refraining from battle*; *nostros*, §§ 139. 3; 205. Rem. 7. (1.), N. 1; *prælio*, R. 42; ¶ 23. xix.; *que*, R. 78; ¶ 23. xxxvi.; (§ 198. 11. N. 1.) Composition of the verbs *expectabat* and *abstinēbat*? See ¶ 18; for vowel changes in composition, see § 189. 1—3, &c. — *Inter carros, among the wagons* [to the midst of], R. 35. (1.). — 26. *Per fugitivos, [through to] by fugitives*, R. 35. (1.); (cf. R. 47. Rem. 4.) — *A populo*; R. 41; ¶ 23. xix.

[P. 21.] L. 16. *He was engaging in, &c.; [committo.]* — 18. *All Gaul*; *Gallia tota.* — 19. *Were carrying on*; *gerēbant.* — 20. *Large wheels*; ¶ 23. II. — 21. *By the Gauls*; R. 48.

REMARK. It is recommended, at this stage, to introduce freely *extemporaneous exercises*, over and above the examples given in each lesson, in both the Latin to be turned into English, and the English to be turned into Latin, varying the forms of construction and inflection to any extent.

#### IV.

3. [a. Learn the conjugation and inflection of the verb *sum*, present, imperfect, and future indicative: § 153; ¶ 25. What is the root? Is the verb regular or irregular?]

1. L. 1. *Cantamus, &c.* Translate these examples first by the affixes, irrespective of the particular meaning of the



Page

3. verb; thus, *cant* (root); *amus*, we are [loving, i. e., assume any English verb], &c. Add other forms of each verb.

[b. Learn the declension of Pronouns: §§ 132—139: the paradigms *ego*, *tu*, *sui*, *ille*, *hic*, *is*, *idem*, *ipse*, *qui*, *quis*, and *aliquis*. Distinguish the several classes of pronouns, and their peculiar uses.]

2. L. 9. **Ego canto**; why is *ego* expressed? § 209. Rem. 1. (b.). — **Nos . . . appellāmur**; which is the subject, and which the predicate? R. 10. — 10. **Vos Romāni**; what is the ellipsis? § 209. Rem. 4. N. 5. — **Hæc . . . displicet**, *this sentiment pleases me, that displeases*. What is the distinction in the use of the pronouns *ille* and *hic*? § 207. Rem. 23. (a.), (b.), (c.); what is the rule for the agreement of *hæc* and *illa*? R. 5; (see ¶ 23. xxxi.); *mihi*, R. 23. Rem. 2; *displicet*; composition and vowel change? § 189. 4. — 11. **Iste amicus**, *that friend of yours*; § 207. Rem. 25. — 12. **Beati sunt ii quorum . . . regitur**, *they are happy whose life is regulated by good principles*. Why is *ii* here preferred before *quorum*? § 207. Rem. 26. (a.); *quorum*, R. 6. (a.); *præceptis*, R. 47. 3. — 13. **Paulatim, etiam**; R. 77. — **Magnum in castris usum**, *great experience [in camp] in war*; *castris*; how irregular? § 97; why in the ab.? R. 35. (2.), or 54. Rem. 3: [¶ 23. xxv.]: *habebant*, *had had*; § 145. II. 2. — 15. **Inter se . . . dant**, [they give an oath between themselves], *they mutually pledge themselves, or take an oath*; *se*, R. 8. — 16. **Ad . . . cogit**, *he collects together to the trial his slaves*; *cogit*; what the composition, and what euphonic changes? § 189. 5. Ex. (b.). — **Qui se . . . iudicat**, *who [himself] voluntarily judges himself*, &c.; *ipse*; observe its construction and its intensive use; § 207. Rem. 28. (a.). — 17. **Custodiā**; R. 44.

[P. 21.] L. 22. **They are**, &c.; why should the pronouns be expressed in this sentence? — **Those . . . these, illi . . . hi**. — 24. **They . . . together, illi . . . inter se**. — 25. **He will give him**, &c.; [to him, R. 23.] — **That man . . . precepts, beātus est is qui**, &c. — 26. **He was . . . custody, se ipse**, &c. — [P. 22.] L. 1. **That boy**, &c., **iste puer**, &c. — 2. **Even . . . Rhine**; which of the demonstrative pronouns, *ille*, *hic*, or *is*, should be used in the antecedent clause — *that camp*?



## V.

Page

3. **REMARK.** This lesson introduces nouns and adjectives of the third declension, in which the *theme* seldom exhibits the root in its simple form, on account of euphonic changes. These are not sufficiently accounted for in the Grammar. To supply this, and some other defects, the scholar will frequently be referred to the *Tables*, accompanying the Lessons.

[a. Learn the affixes of the third declension: ¶ 4. 1. 2. §§ 55. 58: also ¶ 9. I.; II., Rem. 1. 2; III. Ex., Rem. 1. (1.), (2.), (3.); IV., Rem. 1. 2.

b. Learn the paradigms, *stirps, lex, nix, glans, nox, Tiryns, hiems, virgo, sanguis, pecten, consul, honor, flos, pulvis, pater, fames, securis, mare, lac, robor, corpus, funus*, and illustrate from them the principles contained in ¶ 9. referred to above; consult also ¶ 2., second arrangement.]

**NOTE.** It is earnestly recommended not to hurry over this preliminary lesson, but to dwell upon it till it is fully mastered.]

1. L. 18. **In . . . Alpes**; what is the root of *Alpes*, and what the characteristic [last letter of the root]? To what class of consonants does it belong? ¶ 2. Are the affixes of the third declension annexed with, or without connecting vowels? — 19. **Qui . . . erat**; *bello*, R. 53; ¶ 23. xxv.; *dux*; what the root, and how is the theme formed? — 20. **Hi . . . differunt**, *these differ* [between themselves] *from each other in their laws*; *legibus* is the adjunct of what, and what does it denote with respect to the word it limits? R. 50; *differunt*; composition and euphonic change in composition? Is it regular or irregular? § 179. — **Dumnorigem**; how can the theme of this word be determined? Ans. *The root is Dumnorig*; add *s*; ¶ 9. I. II. (2.). — 21. **Nix**; what is the root? To what class of consonants does the characteristic *v*, in this word and some others, seem to belong? ¶ 2., second arrangement. — 22. **Ille . . . præpōnit**, *he places guards over Dumnorig*; *Dumnorigi*, R. 24. — 23. **Litteras**; how irregular? § 97. — 24. **Pro . . . fortitudinis**, [for the multitude, &c.] *in proportion to, &c.*; *multitudine*; what is the root, and how is the theme formed? ¶ 9. II. Rem. 1. IV. (4.); *atque*; what is the difference in the use of *et, que, ac, atque*? § 198. II. 1. Rem. (a.), (b.). — 25. **Nos . . . desūmus**, *we, we consuls, are deficient [in duty]*; *desūmus*; what is the composition and derivation? § 153. — 26. **Helvetii . . . transdūcunt**, *the Helvetians are now transporting their forces through the country of the Sequanians*; *fines*; the root and theme? ¶ 9. II. Rem. 2; *copias*, § 97. — 29. **Iter avertit**; is *iter* subject or object?

[c. Adjectives of the Third Declension: §§ 108—111. 113. 114; ¶ 8. (b.).



Page

## 4. d. Comparison of Adjectives : §§ 122—126.]

2. L. 1. *Ariovistus . . . contendit*; *prælio* denotes what, as an adjunct of *contendit*? Ans. *It answers the question how?* R. 47. 3. — 2. *Tres*; § 109. — 3. *Fluminis*; R. 12. Rem. 1. — *Rheni*; R. 4. — 4. *Longe nobilissimus*; § 127. 3. — 5. *Quam maximum*; § 127. 4.

[P. 22.] L. 4. Many of the plebeians, *multi plebum*; R. 12. — 6. Very brave, [superlative]. — 9. Lieutenant, [legātus]. — 11. Brave people, [most brave]. — 12. Our soldiers, *nostri*. — 15. Town, [pagus].

REMARK. A very interesting and instructive exercise should be commenced at this stage, if not before, on Etymologies, particularly with respect to the derivation of English words from Latin primitives. A little practice will give one great facility in this exercise, and he will be surprised at the very large number of words contributed to our language from this source. See ¶ 26.

## VI.

[a. Learn the Fourth and Fifth Declensions : §§ 87—90.

b. The Comparison of Adverbs : § 194.]

L. 9. *Acrius*, [acriter]. — 10. *Reipublicæ*; § 91. Of what two nouns is it the common adjunct? What does *quàm* in this sentence connect, and what relation does it mark? § 198. II. 3. — 11. *Plebi*; R. 22. — 14. *Ex usu terræ Galliæ*, for the benefit of the Gallic country, &c.; *quàm*; what does it connect?

[P. 22.] L. 17. Most speedily, *celerrime*. — 18. Three days; R. 36.

## VII.

[a. Learn ¶¶ 14. 15. 16; also ¶ 11. (b.); the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative, active; also the terminations of the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect, active : § 152.

b. Learn the inflection of the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect, active, of *amo*, *monco*, *rego*, and *audio*: §§ 155—160; also the mode of translating these tenses.]

1. L. 16. *Quos imperavērat*, whom he had commanded. How is *imperavērat* parsed? ¶ 24. (d.). *Imperavērat* is a regular, transitive verb, of the first conjugation, from *impēro*: *impēro*, *imperāre*, *imperāvi*, *imperātus*, *imperatūrus*, *imperandus*; compounded of *in* and *paro*; sign of the complete tense, *v*, with the regular connective; affix, *erat* (imperfect of the verb *sum*); the pluperfect indicative active; synopsis of



Page

4. the modes, active voice, *imperavēram, imperavissem*; inflected, *imperavēram, imperavēras, imperavērat*; third person singular, to agree with a pronoun implied in the affix; R. 9. (b.). — 17. **Confirmāvit**; is it the perfect definite or indefinite? § 145. iv. — **Eam . . . adolēvit**, that victim, which he there consecrated, he burned entire. — 18. **Persuādīt**; what is the sign of the complete tenses in the conjugation? What euphonic change in the addition of *s*? ¶ 17. 1. i. — **Castīco**; R. 23. Rem. 2. — 19. **Obtinuērat**; sign of the complete tense? — 20. **Conduxit**; sign of the complete tense, and what euphonic change? — 21. **Eripuit**, [eripio]. — **Pertinuērit**, [pertineo], shall have feared. — 22. **Et consilium . . . abjecērit**, and shall have [cast away] abandoned his design of war; *abjecērit*, [abjicio]; sign of the complete tense, the lengthening of the root vowel; ¶ 15. a. 2. — **Fecit**, [facio, ¶ 15. a. 2.] — 23. **Civitātī**; R. 23. Rem. 2. — **Suscēpit**, [suscipio]. — 24. **Ejus . . . misērat**, he had sent his army under the yoke; i. e. under a spear supported by two upright spears, as a sign of subjection; *misērat*, [mitto]. — **Dedērunt**; what is the sign of the complete tense? ¶ 15. a. 3. — 25. **Tradidērunt**, [trado, trans-do, ¶ 18.]

[c. Learn (¶ 17. a.) the Euphonic Changes of Consonants.]

2. L. 26. Translate and parse the following forms, distinguishing the mode of forming the complete tenses in each, and the euphonic changes.

[P. 22.] L. 21. All the soldiers; R. 23. Rem. 2. — 26. Very many, [permultus]. — From battle; R. 42; ¶ XIX. — [P. 23.] L. 1. At Rome; R. 21. 1.

## VIII.

5. [a. Learn the terminations of the subjunctive, present and imperfect, active and passive, and the perfect and pluperfect subjunctive, active: § 152. In the present and imperfect distinguish the mode vowel, and the tense sign of the imperfect: ¶ 13. 2. 3. How are the terminations of the perfect and pluperfect derived? ¶ 14; i. e. they are some form of the verb *sum*.

b. Learn the subjunctive of *amo, moneo, rego, audio*, present and imperfect, active and passive, and the perfect and pluperfect subjunctive, active: §§ 155—160. Learn also the mode of translating into English the several tenses: §§ 155. 156.

c. As the subjunctive mode belongs, strictly, only to dependent sentences, it is necessary for the learner to understand the connection of tenses; i. e. between the principal and dependent clauses: § 258. A. B. 1. 1. 2. II.



Page

5. *d.* Learn the general principles of the subjunctive mode: § 260. i. ii.; ¶ 21. *a.* i. Rem. 1. 2; *b.* ii. Rem. Special rules governing particular classes of dependent sentences should be learned as they occur in reading. They are comprehended in §§ 261—266; ¶ 21. *b.* ii. 1—5.]

1. L. 5. **Quò . . . prohibeat**, *that he may the easier prohibit the Helvetians*. Point out the law governing the connection of the tenses in this and the following sentences. What is the relation of the dependent clause in this sentence to the leading or principal clause? Ans. *The final*; i. e. *it denotes the purpose*; R. 62; ¶ 21. *b.* ii. 1. Which vowel in the termination of *prohibeat* determines the mode, which we may call the mode vowel? — 6. **Itaque**; what relation does it mark? § 198. 6. — **A Sequanis impētrat, ut . . . patiantur**, *he [obtains from the Sequanians that they may allow] obtains leave of the Sequanians to allow, &c.* How is the clause denoting the purpose usually expressed in English? Ans. *By the infinitive*. How in Latin? R. 62. How then should clauses denoting purpose, object, result, &c., (in Latin expressed by the subjunctive,) be translated into English? — 7. **Uti . . . perficit**, *he causes them to [give between themselves] exchange hostages*. — 8. **Sequani [obsides dant] ne, &c.** — **Ne . . . prohibeant**; R. 62. — 9. **Quā . . . conveniant**; R. 65. — 10. **Conscripti Patres**; R. 40. ¶ 23. xviii. — 11. **Secēdant imprōbi**, *let the wicked depart*; R. 60. 6. ¶ 21. *b.* ii. 5. (*b.*), Rem. 1. § 267. Rem. 2. — 12. **Prendit**; what tense, as *peteret*, in the dependent clause, is imperfect? § 258. i. 2. — 14. **Qui . . . præsidiī**, *who fear that I may not have [enough of guard] a sufficient guard*; *verentur*, § 142. 4. (*a.*); *ut habeam*, R. 62. Rem. 7; *præsidiī*, R. 12. Rem. 4. — 15. **Athēnas**; R. 37. — **Qui . . . accusarent**; R. 64. 5; ¶ 21. *b.* ii. 1. — 16. **Si vales, &c.**; ¶ 21. *b.* 3. (*a.*); R. 61. 2. Rem. 1. — **Si . . . dabit**; ¶ 21. *b.* 3. (*b.*); § 261. 2. — **Si . . . daret**; ¶ 21. *b.* 3. (*c.*). — 17. **Si . . . pestis**; ¶ 21. *b.* 3. (*c.*). — 18. **Si . . . liberassēmus**, *if Catiline had remained, . . . we should not have freed . . .*; R. 61. 1; ¶ 21. *b.* 3. (*d.*); *liberassēmus*, § 162. 7. (*a.*); *rempublicam*, § 91. — 20. **Qui sim**; R. 65; ¶ 21. *b.* ii. 5. (*b.*), 2.

2. L. 22. Distinguish in these examples the mode vowel, the tense sign of the imperfect, and the formation of the perfect and pluperfect.

[P. 23.] L. 4. **Let the . . . fortified**; R. 60. 6. — **He commands . . . to fortify**; by what mode should the dependent clause be expressed? R. 62. — 5. **He undertook**,



- Page  
5. &c.; what tenses should be employed in each clause of this sentence? § 58. 1. 2. — 9. **To announce**; how expressed in Latin? — 10. **If Caesar**, &c.; distinguish the different kinds of supposition in the following sentences: ¶ 21. *b.* 11. 3. (*a.*), (*b.*), (*c.*), (*d.*).

## IX.

[*a.* Learn the affixes of the imperative, active and passive: § 152: also the imperative of *amo*, *moneo*, *rego*, and *audio*: §§ 155—160: and the appropriate translation into English. See also ¶ 25.

*b.* Learn the affixes of the infinitive, present, perfect, and future, active and passive: § 152: also the infinitive of *amo*, *moneo*, *rego*, and *audio*: §§ 155—160.

*c.* Consult §§ 267—273: ¶ 23. xxxiii.]

6. 1. L. 1. **Muta . . . mentem**, [change thou], *change now that purpose of yours*; *muta*; what person? Has it the personal sign? (For the analysis of the imperative endings, see ¶ 25.) — **Obliviscere cædis** [istius], *forget* [that slaughter of yours] *that murderous purpose of yours*; *obliviscere*, [obliviscor, deponent]; *cædis*, R. 16. — 2. **Educ**; what is peculiar in the form? § 162. 4. — **Omnes tuos**; § 205. Rem. 7. (1.) N. 1. — 3. **Illum Jovem**, [that Jove]; i. e. Jupiter represented by that statue of his; *Jovem*, § 85. — 4. **Discedite**; the force of *dis* in composition? — **Consules . . . habento**, *let the consuls have*, &c.; *summum*, [superus, (super.)]. — 5. **Difficilius**, [difficilis, comp.]; what does it agree with, as an adjective? R. 5. Rem. 8. (*a.*); *invenire*; what is its construction? R. 69. ¶ 23. xxxiii. — 6. **Pontem . . . rescindi**, *the bridge . . . he orders to be torn down*; *pontem*, R. 39. (cf. § 272.); *rescindi*, R. 70; ¶ 23. xxxiii. — 7. **Cœpit** [cœpi]; § 183. (2.) 1. — **Nequid . . . statuërit**, *not to determine any thing too severe against his brother*; *nequid*, § 138. 2; *gravius*, § 256. Rem. 9. (*a.*). — **Scire . . . capere**, [saying, § 270. Rem. 2. (*b.*)] *that he knows that those things are true, nor does any one* [take] *feel more grief on account of it than he*; *se*, R. 39. — **Illa**, *those things*; § 205. Rem. 7. (2.); R. 39. — 9. **Quàm se**; R. 56. Rem. 3; *dolôris*, R. 12. Rem. 3. (For the translation and construction of the accusative with the infinitive in this and other sentences, see § 272. and ¶ 21. (*b.*), 11. 5. (*a.*), 1.).

[*d.* Learn the description of *participles*, *gerunds*, and *supines*: §§ 25. 148. 1. (1.), (2.), (3.), (4.), 2. (*a.*), (*b.*), 3. Give the participles, gerunds, and supines of *amo*, *moneo*, *rego*, and *audio*: §§ 155—160.



Page

6. How are participles in *us* declined? § 111. Rem. How are those in *us* declined? § 105. Rem. 2. Of what declension is the gerund? of what the supine?

*e.* Inflect the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative, and the perfect and pluperfect subjunctive, passive; i. e. the compound tenses: §§ 156—160; also see § 162. 14. 15.]

REMARK. The participle, like the infinitive, should be regarded as a mode of the verb. They both contain the elements of a distinct sentence; but, by abbreviation, the clause of which they would otherwise form the distinct predicate is incorporated in a connected or associated clause — the participle as an adjective, the infinitive as an abstract noun; as, *When the preacher had finished his discourse, he sat down*; or (incorporated) *the preacher, having finished his discourse, sat down*. *I came that I might hear the preacher*; or (incorporated) *I came to hear* [to the hearing] *the preacher*.

2. L. 11. **Quum . . . petēret**; R. 63. 5. Rem. 2. — **Flens**; § 113. 2; parsed, ¶ 24. (*d.*). *Flens* is a *reg. verb.* of the *second conj.*, from *fleo*: *fleo, flere, flevi, fletus, fleturus, flendus*; formed from the root *fl* by affixing (ents) *ens*; found in the *present part. act.*; as an *adjective*, it is of the *third declension*, one termination: *flens, flentis, &c.*; formed from the root *flent* by adding *s*, but a *lingual* before *s* is *dropped* (¶ 9. II. (3.)); found in the *nom. sing. mas.*, to agree with a pronoun implied in the affix of the verb: R. 5. — 12. **Consolatus**, [*consolor, dep.*], *having encouraged* [him]; a *regular, deponent verb, &c.*; *perfect participle, passive in form* [active in signification]; as an *adjective*, of the *first and second declension*, three terminations; declined like *bonus*; *nom. sing. mas.*, to agree with *Cæsar*; R. 5. — **Orandi**, [of entreating] *of entreaty*; *orandi* is a *gerund* [a participial or verbal noun] of the *second declension*; [it is doubted whether the Grammar is right in rejecting the nominative]; *orandi, orando, orandum, orando*; found in the *genitive*, limiting *finem*; R. 11. (§ 275. Rem. 1.); ¶ 23. XXXIII. — 13. **Faciat**; R. 62. Rem. 4. — **Capto monte . . . nostris**, *the mountain having been gained, and our men coming up*; *capto* and *succedentibus* parsed like *flens* and *consolatus* above; *monte* and *nostris*, R. 57. (As this construction is very common in the Latin language, let the whole of § 257 be carefully studied.) — 14. **Latère aperto**, *on the* [open or uncovered] *right flank*, which was called open, as it was unprotected by the shield, worn on the left arm. — **Aggressi sunt**, *attacked*; *aggressi sunt* is a *regular, deponent verb*, of the *third conj.*, from *aggredior*: *aggredior, aggrēdi, aggressus, &c.*; compounded of *ad* and *gradior* [give the euphonic change of the preposition, and the vowel change of the simple verb]; formed from the root *aggred* by affixing the participle sign *s*, and the



Page

6. decl. ending *us*, with the *present tense* of *sum* [i. e., compounded of the per. pas. part. and the verb *sum*]; found in the *per. indic.* [passive in form] *active, to agree, &c.*; R. 9. (b.).

NOTE. It should be observed that the participle in these compound forms is declined, like any other adjective, to agree with the subject of the verb.

**Legātis . . . sumptūrum** [esse], *he answered the legates that he would take a day* [for deliberating] *to deliberate*; *legātis*, R. 23; *deliberandum*, R. 35. (1.); (cf. § 275. Rem. 3.); *sumptūrum* [esse], *to be about to take*, § 162. 14; it may be parsed (§ 24. (d.)) thus: *sumptūrus* is a *regular trans. verb.*, of the *third conj.*, from *sumo*: *sumo, sumēre, sumpsī, &c.* [account for the peculiarity in forming the complete tense: § 17. III.]; formed from the root *sum* by affixing the part. sign *tur* and the decl. ending *um* (inserting the euphonic *p*) with *esse* [i. e., the infinitive of the verb *sum* here understood, § 270. Rem. 3.]; found in the *future infinitive active, having for its subject a pronoun understood*, and the *direct object of respondit*; R. 70. — 15. **Ad . . . conficiendas**, [to these things being accomplished] *to accomplish these things*; R. 75. II.

NOTE. Let this construction be understood. The gerund construction would be, *ad res conficiendum*; i. e., *ad* in this case governs *conficiendum*, and *conficiendum* governs *res*: R. 75. I.; but we have the gerundive construction in the text, which, especially with the accusative of the gerund, is much the most common; in which case the preposition governs the noun, and the gerund agrees with it like any part., *though still rendered as a gerund.*

16. **Quōd . . . subēgi**, *because* [it is to be lived by me] *I must live, &c.*; *mīhi*, R. 25. III.; *vivendum sit*, R. 9, Rem. 3. (3.); § 274. Rem. 11. — 17. **Constituērunt**, &c., [constituerunt comparāre ea, &c.]. — 19. **Arbitrāti**, [arbitror, dep.] — 20. **Portatūri erant**; § 162. 14. — **Legāti . . . injurias**, *ambassadors came to complain of injuries*; *questum*, R. 76. II.; § 23. XVI.; *injurias*, R. 76. I. (i. e., R. 29.). — 21. **Quæ . . . putat**, *whatever each one supposes easy to be done by himself*; *Quæ*, R. 39. [esse understood, § 270. Rem. 3.]; *sibi*, R. 25. II. [limiting factu]; *factu*, R. 50; (cf. § 276. III.). — **Æquo animo**, [with an equal mind] *readily*; R. 47. 3.

[P. 23.] L. 14. **Let us, &c.**; how must this be expressed in Latin? § 260. Rem. 6. (a.). — 15. **Not join**; what negative adverb should be here used? § 260. 6. (b.). — 16. **Being called**, [appello]. — 17. **To cry out**, [clamo]. — 18. **To ask aid**; § 264. 5. — **We must live**, *nobis cum hostibus vivendum est aut illi a nobis vincendi sunt*. [Explain and parse the several words in this construction]. — 19. **Having accom-**



Page

6. **plished, hac re confectâ, &c.** — 21. **That they would take time**; what is the Latin construction? § 272; as the subject of the complementary clause is the same as that of the leading clause, should it be expressed? § 239. Rem. 2. — 22. **To wage war upon the Tulingi, Tulingis bellum inferre; Tulingis**; R. 24. — 24. **Crying aloud, clamans.**

## X.

[a. Complete the inflection of the verb *sum*, or the associated form *fu*: § 153: See § 154: also *possum*: § 154. Rem. 7.

b. Learn the irregular verbs, *volo, fero, edo, fio, eo, queo*: §§ 178—182. Point out the irregularities of these verbs, arising from *composition, contraction, syncope, vowel changes, associated roots, &c.* A single example or two we give below, by way of illustration, writing the regular and irregular forms in opposite columns, designating the place of syncopated letters by the apostrophe, and restoring the true vowel, written at the right, above.

Pres. Indic.	Pres. Subj.	Imp. Subj.
volo, = volo	volam, = ve'lî'm	volêrem, = ve'l'l'rem
volis, = v'is	volas, = ve'lî's	volêres, = ve'l'l'res
volit, = vu'l't	volat, = ve'lî't	volêret, = ve'l'l'ret
volimus, = volî'mus	volamus, = ve'lî'mus	volerêmus, = ve'l'l'rêmus
volitis, = vu'l'tis	volatis, = ve'lî'tis	volerêtis, = ve'l'l'rêtis
volunt, = volunt	volant, = ve'lî'nt	volerent, = ve'l'l'rent

The ingenious teacher, or scholar even, by such formulas, will readily discover similar irregularities in the other verbs, where the Grammar is not sufficiently explicit.]

1. L. 23. **Nobilitâtis**; is it the ~~subjective~~ or *objective* genitive? § 211. Rem. 2. — 24. **Persuâsit**; what is its direct object? R. 62; what relation then does *ut* mark? Ans. *The complementary relation*; i. e., connecting the clause following as the object, or complement, of *persuasit*. — 25. Why is **exirent** in the imperfect tense? why subj. mode? what is the root of *eo*? Ans. *i*. — **His . . . fiêbat**, [on account of these things] *on this account it happened*; *fiêbat*; what is its subject? how is it then used here? § 184. (a.), (b.). — **Ut**; what relation does it mark in this sentence? Ans. *The complementary*; (this relation is denoted whenever the conjunction introduces a sentence used substantively.) — **Ut et . . . et**, *that they were BOTH wandering less widely abroad, AND were less able, &c.*; for the repetition of *et*, see § 278. Rem. 7. — 26. **Possent**; why is this verb, as well as the preceding, in the subjunctive? R. 62. Rem. 3. N. 1. — **Trium mensium**, *for three months*; R. 11. Rem. 6. — 27. **Quemque**; R. 39. — **Domo**; R. 42; (cf. ¶ 23. XIX.); for its decl. see § 89. —



Page

- 6. 28. Eo . . . perfecto, having performed this work ; § 257.**  
 Rem. 5. (a.). — **Quò . . . possit, that he may the easier prevent**  
 [them] *if they should attempt to cross over* [he being unwilling]  
*while he was unwilling.* — **29. Facilius, [facile] ; se invito,**  
**R. 57. 7. (a.) ; conarentur, ¶ 21. (b.), II. 3. (c.). — 30. Helve-**  
**tis facere, that** [it is in the mind [to] of the Helvetians]  
*the Helvetians have it in mind to make, &c. ; renuciatur ;*  
 what is the subject? § 209. Rem. 3. (5.) ; what construction  
 follows *renuciatur*? Ans. The *oratio obliqua* ; § 266. 2 ; ¶ 21.  
 (b.), II. 5. (a.), 1 ; *esse* ; what is the subject? § 269. Rem. 3. —
- 7. 2. Quæ civitas ; is quæ here a relative or adjective? § 137.**  
 1. (cf. § 206. (b.) &c.). — **3. Provinciâ [nostrâ Provinciâ] ;**  
 i. e., the Roman province in the south-western part of Gaul.  
 — **Suâque, and their possessions ; § 205. Rem. 7. (2.) n. 2. —**  
**Non possent, could not ; why in the subjunctive? — 4. Ro-**  
**gatum, to ask ; how parsed?**

[P. 23.] **L. 27. Territory, [fines]. — [P. 24.] L. 1. Took**  
**place, [fio]. — Was bearing ;** what number of the verb  
 should be used? § 209. 11. (4.). — **2. Three months ; R. 36.**  
 — **3. Having . . . guards, [his guards having been dispersed].**  
 — **Fortification, [opus]. — 4. Could, [possum]. — 5. Cæsar**  
**intended, [it was in mind to Cæsar]. — 6. These reasons,**  
**[hæ res].**

### RECAPITULATION.

It will be well for the pupil, at this point, to pause and see if he has mastered perfectly what has already been attempted. If he has pursued the foregoing lessons carefully, adopting implicitly the system of reviews recommended in the introduction, this recapitulation will be easy, but still useful ; if, however, any part of the subjects passed over has not been understood, or perfectly committed, no further advance should be allowed till the deficiency is made up. To assist in this general review, we bring together a very brief summary of the subjects of the several Lessons ; the references in each lesson should be carefully reviewed.

**I. Pronunciation** — sounds of letters, accentuation, division of syllables, &c. ; general principles of conjugation — personal affixes, nude and euphonic ; analysis of affixes, personal, numeral, passive, and tense signs, mode vowels, &c.

**II. Conjugation of the verb** — principal parts, roots how formed, &c. ; general principles of declension — roots, affixes, analysis of affixes, distinction of cases — direct, indirect, subjective, objective ; first and second declension ; rules of arrangement in Latin construction.

**III. Adjectives of the first and second decl. ; mode of classification in decl. ; comparison with nouns of the same decl.**

**IV. Conjugation and inflection of *sum* ; declension of pronouns ; their classification and uses.**



Page

7. V. Nouns of the third decl.; changes of the root to form the theme; different classes of roots — labial, palatal, lingual, liquid, monosyllabic, neuters, &c.; euphonic and vowel changes; declension of adjectives of the third decl.; comparison of adjectives.

VI. Nouns of the fourth and fifth decl.; comparison of adverbs.

VII. Complete tenses; peculiarity of formation; modification of the root; the peculiar affix; three methods of forming the complete tenses in the distinct modes; three of forming the per. and fut. pass. part. and the fut. act. part.; remarks; and euphonic changes of consonants.

VIII. Subjunctive mode; general principles of the subjunctive; distinction between it and the *indic.*; mode vowels and sign of the imperfect; special rules for dependent sentences and exponential connectives.

IX. The imperative and infinitive modes; rules that govern their use; analysis of endings; participles, gerunds, and supines; their decl., syntax, &c.

X. Irregular verbs; sources of irregularity; composition, contraction, syncope, vowel changes, &c.

REMARK. Review all the rules of syntax already learned, and all the Latin words already used, with their peculiarities, if any.

## XI.

[a. Learn the geography of Gallia Antiqua [ancient Gaul]; its boundaries, civil divisions, mountains, rivers, lakes, &c.; its direction from Italy, from Germany, &c.; in what part the Belgæ, the Celtæ, the Aquitani, the Helvetii, the Ædui, &c., &c.]

b. The general principles of grammatical analysis: first — Sentences, § 200. 1—5; second — Propositions, § 201. 1—13.

c. Give the general table for Gender: ¶ 10: and the exceptions to the general rules of Gender: §§ 27—34.]

1. L. 5. **Dividitur**; what is the personal sign? Is there any numeral sign? What the passive sign? — **In**; parse strictly by the synopsis: ¶ 24. (f). — 6. **Dividebat**, *was dividing*; what the tense sign, &c.? — **Divisa est**, *was divided*; simple or compound tense? What is the analogy in the English passive? Why is *divisa* in the nom. fem.? — 7. **Quarum partium**, *of which parts*; what does the genitive here limit? R. 12. Rem. 1. — 8. **II**; why used here, rather than *illi* or *hi*? — 9. **Ipsorum**; what does it mean more than *eorum* would in its place? Ans. *It is reflexive, and therefore more emphatic.* — **Lingua**; what question does *lingua* answer with reference to the verb *appellantur*? Ans. *How?* R. 47. — 10. **Inter se differunt**, *differ* [among themselves] *from each other.* — 12. **Ab Aquitanis**; why *ab*, and not *a* or *abs*?



Page

7. The relation of *ab*? — 13. **Dividit**; is the subject simple or compound? In what number should we expect the verb to be? R. 9. Rem. 12. (2.), N. 9.

[d. Exceptions to the rules for gender in Declensions First and Second.]

2. L. 14. Before reading this section, point out the ellipses in the several sentences, and supply them, comparing it with the preceding section. — **Est**, [i. e., *divisa est*,] is *all divided*. — 15. **Aquitani**; what is the predicate? — 16. **Celtæ** . . . **Galli**; are these nouns the direct subject or predicate of the verb *appellantur*?

[P. 24.] L. 9. **The Belgians**, &c.; should the verb be singular or plural? — 10. **Whose**; what is the antecedent or subject, and hence what gender? R. 6.

## XII.

[a. The analysis of the Subject of a Proposition: § 202. 1—6.  
I. 1—3. II. 1—3.

b. Exceptions to rules for gender, *Third Decl. mas.*: §§ 58—61.]

1. L. 19. **Omnium**; R. 12. Rem. 2. — 20. **Quòd**; what relation does it mark between the two sentences? Is the sentence from *Hi* to *commeant* simple, compound, or complex? Is the sentence of which the verbs are *commeant* and *effeminat* simple, compound, or complex? — **Minimèque**; compare; [never pass an adjective or adverb without giving its comparison, if it has any.] — 23. **Aquitānis**; R. 56. 2. — **Germanānis**; R. 22. Rem. 1. — 25. **Incōlunt**; how does it form the complete tenses? What vowel change in the per. pass. part.?

[c. Exceptions to the rules of gender, *Third Decl. fem.*: §§ 62—65.]

2. L. 27. **Propterea quòd**, [on account of this [which is] because] *because that* (i. e., it is only a little more specific and intensive than simple *quòd*). — 1. **A cultu** . . . **absunt**, are farthest removed from the cultivation and refinement of the [Roman] Province. Difference between *cultus* and *humanitas* — the Latin and English etymologies of the two words. — **Minimèque** . . . **commeant**, the least frequently resort to, &c. 2. **Ad effeminandos**, to the enervating; is *effeminandos* a gerund or gerundive? R. 75. II. Rem. 2. Give the gerund construction, and point out the difference. — 3. **Proximique**, [propior]. — 5. **Quā de** . . . **præcēdunt**, for which reason



Page

8. *also the Helvetians excel the rest of the Gauls in valor.* Is *quā* a relative, adjective, or a relative adjective? What is peculiar in the use of *reliquus* and similar adjectives? R. 5. Rem. 17. — *Virtūte*; R. 50. — 6. *Fere quotidianis, almost daily.* — 7. *Quum*; § 263. 5. — *Aut*; corresponds with what, and what relation does it mark? — *Suis*; R. 8. — *Finibus*; R. 51. — 8. *In finibus*; does *in* mark the relation of *place to which*, or *place in which*? *finibus*; what gender? § 63. (2.).

[P. 24.] L. 15. *Than they*; in what case should the pronoun be, in Latin? — *Those living, ii incolentes.* — 17. *On this account it happens, hac re fit.* — *Helvetians*; what is the construction? ¶ 21. (b.), II. 5. (a.).

## XIII.

[a. Analysis of the *subject*, continued: § 202. III. to the end: analysis of the *predicate*: § 203. 1—II.]

b. Exceptions to the rules of gender, *Third Decl. neut.*: §§ 66. 67.]

1. L. 9. *Obtinēre, possess*; what is its case and construction? R. 9. Rem. 3. (5.), (a.). — *Initium capit*, [takes its beginning] *begins.* — 10. *Continētur*, [it] *is bounded.* What is the ellipsis between the adjuncts — *flumine, Oceāno, finibus*? § 323. 1. (b.), (1.). — 11. *Attingit . . . Rhenum, it touches also upon the river Rhine* [from or by] *by the side of the Sequanians and Helvetians*; notice the conjugation, composition, &c., of *attingit*. — 12. *Vergit*, [verges,] *is extended.* — *Septentriones, the north*; distinguish the composition and etymology of this word. — 13. *Extrēmis*, [extēra]. — *Oriuntur*, [arise,] *commence.* — *Galliæ*; i. e., the middle division of the country occupied by the Celts. — *Inferiorem partem*; i. e., the mouth; *inferiorem*, [infērus]. — 14. *Spectant . . . solem, they extend* [look towards] *towards the north and east.* — 16. *Ad Hispaniam, near to Spain.* — 17. *Inter . . . septentrionem*; i. e., north-west.

[c. Analysis of the *predicate*, continued: §§ 203. II. to the end.]

2. L. 18. *Obtentūros esse, are about to or will possess*; where made, and construction? What does *obtentūros* agree with as an adjective? — 19. *Obtinuisse, to have possessed*; why the complete tense used here? § 268. 2. Rem. 1. (a.) — 23. *Attacti*, [attag-ti]; what euphonic change, and what the strengthened root? ¶ 17. II.; ¶ 16. VI. Rem. 3. — 24. *Attingendus est, must be touched upon*; § 274. Rem. 8. (a.).



Page

8. [P. 24.] L. 21. **That part which**; which demonstrative pronoun should be used here? 207. Rem. 26. (a.). — 25. **Near**, *ab*. — 26. **Took their rise**; what tense of the infinitive should be used here? § 268. 2. Rem. 1. (a.).

## XIV.

[a. Exceptions to the rules of gender, Fourth and Fifth Declensions: §§ 88. 90. 1.

b. Analyze the sentences in this and the following lessons, according to §§ 200—203.]

- L. 27. **Apud**, [fundamental meaning, *to, near to, to the presence of*] *among*. — 28. **Marco . . . consulibus**; R. 57. 9. Rem. 7. (a.). — 1. **Regni cupiditate**, *by an ambition* [of the kingdom] *for the supreme power*; *is regni the objective or subjective genitive?* § 211. Rem. 2. — 3. **Dicens**; § 270. Rem. 2. (b.). — **Perfacile esse . . . potiri**, *that it would be easy to gain possession of the power of all Gaul, since, &c.* — **Præstarent**; R. 63. 5. — 4. **Imperio**; R. 45. 1. — **Id . . . persuāsit**, *he persuaded them* [this] *to this the easier on this account*. — **Hoc**; R. 47. — **Eis**; R. 23. Rem. 2. — 6. **Atque**; why used here? § 198. II. 1. Rem. (b.). — 8. **Monte Jura**; the adjunct of what? — 11. **Minus**, [parum]. — **Vagarentur**; why the subjunctive? — 12. **Finitimis**; R. 24. — **Bellandi cupidi**, *desirous* [of waging war] *of war*; *bellandi*, R. 13. — 15. **Se**; R. 39. — **Millia passuum**, [thousands of paces] *miles*; § 118. 6. (a.); *passuum*, R. 12. Rem. 1. 2.

[c. Arrangement of clauses: § 280.]

- [P. 25.] L. 5. **During the consulship**; R. 57. — 7. **By his ambition**; R. 48. II. — **For empire** [of empire]. — 10. **Moreover**, [autem]. — 11. **On account of their position**, *loci naturā*.

## XV.

[a. Syntax: §§ 204—214.

NOTE. It is recommended, at this period, that only the *principal rule*, and a few of the more important remarks, designated by the teacher, be required of the scholar, and that these be committed with great thoroughness, *quoting always by number*, leaving off, for convenience, the hundreds from the section. It is presumed that Lesson XV. will be read at about three lessons. Five rules at a lesson may not be too much. What is omitted should be read over very carefully, and at a later stage committed.

b. Exceptions in Declension, with the declension of Greek Nouns, of Declension First: §§ 43—45.]



Page

9. 1. L. 18. **Permōti**, *influenced*; what euphonic change in forming *permōtus* [permov-tus]? ¶ 17. v. — 19. **Constituērunt**; how does it form its complete tenses? ¶ 16. vi. Rem. 2. What is the direct object of *constituērunt*? Ans. The infinitives *comparāre*, *coemēre*, *facēre*, and *confirmāre*, the conjunction being understood. — 20. **Quām**; its force with the superlative? — 23. **Biennium** . . . **duxērunt**, *they thought that two years would be enough for them*. Is *satis* here an adverb, adjective or substantive? — 24. **In** . . . **confirmant**, [they establish by law their departure into the third year] *they fix upon the third year for their departure*. — 25. **Conficiendas**; composition, euphonic, and vowel changes? — 26. **Suscēpit**, [sub-capio, suscipio]. — 27. **Filio**; for the peculiarity in decl., see § 52, ¶ 6. — **Sequāno**, *the Sequanian*, [paternal adjective]. — 28. **Annos**; R. 36. — **A senātu**; R. 48. i. — 29. **Ut**; connecting *occupāret* to *persuādet*, line 26. — 30. **Itemque**, and *likewise* [persuādet, below] *he persuades*. — 31. **Eo tempore**, *at that time*; R. 53. How is the theme of *tempore* formed from the root *tempor*? ¶ 9. iii. Rem. 1. (2.). — **Principātum** . . . **obtinēbat**, *was possessing the highest authority in his state*. — 32. **Maxime**, [magis]. — **Conarētur**; what apparent violation of the rule for the connection of tenses? § 258. Rem. 1. (a.). — 33. **Perfacile** . . . **perficere**, *he proves to them [that] to perform their designs is [easy to be done] easily done*. With what does *perfacile* agree? Ans. *Perficere*. — 2. **Obtentūrus esset**, *was about to come in possession of*; § 162. 14. Why in the subjunctive? § 266. 3. — **Probat** . . . **possent**, *he proves [that it is not doubtful] that there is no doubt but that the Helvetians [are the most able of, &c.] are the most powerful of Gaul*. For the construction of *quān* with the subjunctive, see § 262. Rem. 10. n. 7; *Galliæ*, R. 12. Rem. 2; *plurimum* [multum], ¶ 23. xv. — 4. **Illis** . . . **conciliatūrum**, *would gain for them the [kingdom, i. e. chief power] supremacy*; i. e. in their respective states. — 6. **Per**; § 247. Rem. 1. — 7. *Galliæ*; R. 20. 4. (cf. ¶ 23. iii.). — **Potiri**; what is the construction of the infinitive after *possum*? Ans. *I would suggest whether it is not the accusative of specification*; R. 34. ii.; ¶ 23. xiii.

[c. Review connection of tenses: § 258.]

[P. 25. L. 18.] **They persuaded**, &c.; what tense should follow in the subordinate clauses — *to buy*, &c.? — 20. **Extensive** [great]. — 26. **He promises**; what mode and tense should follow? Ans. "After *hope*, *promise*, *undertake*, &c., the future infinitive is used with the accus. of the pronoun."



## XVI.

Page

10. [a. Syntax: §§ 215—222; i. e. Rules 15—22.

b. Exceptions in Declension, and the declension of Greek Nouns, of Declension Second: §§ 52—54.]

1. L. 8. **Ut**; § 198. 10. — **Per indicium**, *by testimony*. — **Moribus suis**, *according to their custom*; R. 49. II. — 9. **Ex . . . dicere**, *to plead his cause* [from chains] *in chains*. — 10. **Eum . . . cremeretur**, *it was necessary* (i. e. according to their usage) *that the punishment* [should follow him being condemned] *should be inflicted upon him, should he be condemned* [that he should be burned with fire] *of being burned*. In the analysis of this sentence, it will be seen that the infinitive *sequi*, with its subject accusative *pœnam*, and direct object *eum*, limited by the part. *damnatum*, is the subject of *oportebat*; and the clause *ut*, &c., — in reality in apposition with *pœnam*, — is stated in the form of the result; R. 62. — 11. **Die**; its gender? — **Causæ dictionis**, [of the pleading of his cause] *for pleading his cause*. — 12. **Familiam**, *household*, i. e. all in his employ or service; perhaps the next sentence is only an extension of this, and all the persons mentioned in both sentences may be included in the *hominum milia decem*. — 14. **Ne . . . diceret**, [that he might not, &c.] *from pleading his cause*. — 15. **Armis**; how irregular? § 96. (b.). — **Jus suum exsequi**, *to execute its own authority*. — 16. **Magistratus**; nom. plur. and subject of *cogèrent*. — 17. **Mortuus est**, [morio]. — 18. **Quin . . . consciverit**, [but that] *that he* [himself] *voluntarily* [inflicted death upon himself] *killed himself*. Why does *quin* [qui-ne] lose its negative force here? Ans. *On account of the neque in the principal clause*. *Ipsæ*, § 207. Rem. 28; *sibi*, R. 24; *consciverit*, [conscisco].

[P. 26.] L. 2. **That Orgetorix had it in mind**, *Orgetorigi esse in animo*. — 5. **If condemned**, [damnatus]. — 9. **Soon after**, *statim*.

## XVII.

[a. Syntax: §§ 223—233, or Rules 23—33.

b. Oblique cases of nouns of the Third Declension. For the formation of the *theme* and *genitive singular*, see ¶ 9, which review here.]

1. L. 19. **Nihilo minus**, [less by nothing] *not the less*; *nihilo*, R. 56. Rem. 16. (1.) — 20. **Finibus**; R. 41. or 42;



Page

10. ¶ 23. XIX. — 22. **Numëro . . . oppïda**, [to twelve towns in number] *twelve in number*; *numëro*, R. 50. Supply *et* before *vicos* and *reliqua*. — 24. **Domum reditiönis**, of *returning home*; R. 37. Rem. 1; *domum*; what is peculiar in decl. and gender? — 26. **Trium mensium**; R. 11. Rem. 6; *trium*, § 109. — 28. **Eödem . . . consilio**, [using] *adopting the same purpose*; *uti* [utor]; *consilio*, R. 45. I. — **Oppïdis . . . exustis**, [their towns and villages being burned] *having burned their*, &c.; R. 57. Rem. 5. (a.); *exustis*, [exüro; give the euphonic changes in conjugation]. — 1. **Agrum Noricum**, *country of Noricum*, (whose capital was Noreia: see An. Geog.). — 2. **Receptos . . . adsciscunt**, [being received to themselves, they unite to themselves] *they receive and unite to themselves as allies*.

NOTE. The incorporated or participial construction is much more common in Latin than in English; hence the participle should frequently be construed by the distinct mode, as in the last sentence.

[P. 26.] L. 12. **After Orgetorix'**; R. 57. — **Accomplished**, [facio]. — **In preparing**, *ad eas res parandas*. — 17. **Which each one**, [quisque]; for the number of the verb after *quisque*, see § 209. Rem. 11. (4.).

## XVIII.

[a. Syntax: § 234—244, or Rules 34—44.]

b. Oblique cases of nouns of the Third Declension: § 79—82.]

1. L. 3. **Quibus itineribus**; § 206. (b.), (1.). — 4. **Possent**, *they could*, [if they should wish; § 261. Rem. 4.] — 5. **Vix . . . ducerentur**, *where wagons could with difficulty be led* [one by one] *one at a time*; § 119. III.; *quà*, [quâ parte], here used as a connective adverb. — 6. **Ut**; what is its relation? Ans. *Consecutive*; ¶ 21. (b.), II. 1. — 9. **Inter**; connects *fines* as an adjunct of *fluit* below. — **Pacâti erant**; i. e. by the Romans. — 10. **Vado transitur**, [is crossed by a ford] *is fordable*. — 11. **Allobrogum**; genitive possessive; § 211. Rem. 1. — 14. **Bono . . . Romanum**, [of a good mind] *well disposed towards*, &c.; R. 11. Rem. 6. — 16. **Qua . . . convenient**, [on which day all may assemble, &c.] *for all to assemble*, &c.; R. 64. 5. — 17. **Ante . . . Aprilis**, *on the fifth day before the Kalends of April*; i. e. on the 28th of March; § 326. (4.), (a.), (b.). For the expression *ante . . . Kalendas*, it may be analyzed thus: [in] *diem quintum ante Kalendas*; i. e. *diem* is governed by *in*, not usually, though sometimes expressed; while *Kalendas* is governed by *ante*,



Page

11. always expressed; *dies* is sometimes in the ablative by R. 53. Let the Roman method of reckoning time, referred to above, be here thoroughly learned.

[c. Syntax : § 245—257, or Rules 45—57.

d. Give all the English words derived from the several Latin words in this section, according to ¶ 26.]

2. L. 20. **Id nunciātum esset**, *it was announced*; what does *id* represent or introduce? Ans. *The following clause — eos . . . conāri, which may be regarded as in apposition with it*; § 207. R. 22. — 21. **Ab Urbe**; i. e. Rome. — 22. **Galliam ulteriorem**, *further Gaul*; i. e. in distinction from *Gallia Cisalpina*, or *citerior*, in the north of Italy, and of course nearer Rome. — **Contendit**, *he hastens*. — 23. **Provinciæ . . . impērat**, [he orders the whole Province the largest number of soldiers that is possible] *he orders from the whole Province the largest possible number of soldiers*.

NOTE. We have in this sentence a proper analysis of *quam* with the superlative; i. e., there is always *possum* or a similar word to be supplied, if not expressed.

25. **Legio**; describe the Roman *legion*. — 26. **Certiōres facti sunt**, [have become more certain] *were well informed*; *facti sunt*, [tio, § 180]. — 27. **Civitātis**; its derivation, and difference between *civis* and *civitas*? — 29. **Qui dicērent**, *to say*; why the subjunctive? — **Sibi**, &c.; for this and similar constructions, see § 266. 2; ¶ 21. b. II. 5. (a.); *sibi*, R. 8. (1.). — 32. **Occisum** [esse], § 271. Rem. 3. [ob-cædo = occido].
12. — 2. **Concedendum . . . putābat**, *thought that it* [i. e. the request] *should not be granted*; § 209. Rem. 3. (3.) — 4. **Tamen**; what relation does it mark? — **Ut . . . dum**, *that* [space] *time might intervene till*. — 5. **Convenirent**, *should convene*; R. 63. 4. (1.); ¶ 21. b. II. 4. — 6. **Siquid vellent**, *if they should wish any thing*; for the modes in the condition and the conclusion, see ¶ 21. b. II. 2. (c.); *siquid*, 138. 2. — 7. **Ante . . . Aprilis**, *on the day before the Ides of April*; i. e. on the 12th of April. For the analysis of this construction, see above, page 11, line 17.

[e. Continue to review the rules for Latin arrangement, with the construction and connection of clauses : §§ 279, 280 : and, what is of great importance, make frequent comparisons with the Latin text, and imitate carefully.]

[P. 26.] L. 21. **They had**; R. 26. — 25. **Sometimes forded**, [crossed by a ford]. — [P. 27.] L. 1. **Well disposed**, [of a good mind]. — **Having made**, &c.; how should this clause be expressed in Latin? R. 57. Rem. 5. (a.).



## XIX.

Page

12. [a. Syntax : §§ 258—268, or Rules 58—68. Much must be left to the designation of the teacher, in this and other parts of the Grammar. The principal rules for the connection of tenses and the modes should be learned and quoted. The general statement of the Tables may be found more convenient for reference, though they are not designed to supersede the Grammar, but to be supplementary to it.

b. Oblique cases of nouns of the *Third Declension*, and the declension of Greek nouns of the *Third Declension* : §§ 83—86.]

1. L. 8. **Eā legiōne**; the adjunct of *perducit*; R. 47. — 9. **A . . . Joram**; give the geographical position of these places, and their modern names. — 11. **Millia passuum**; R. 36; *passuum*, R. 12. — 12. **Altitudinem**; primitive or derivative, and what kind of a noun? § 101. 3. — *Novem* and *sedecim*, § 118. 1. — 13. **Dispōnit . . . commūnit**; give the composition and force of the preposition. — 14. **Ubi . . . venit**, *when that day . . . had come*; § 259. (2.), (d.). — 16. **Negat** [ne-aio = say-not] . . . **posse**, *he says that he cannot, according to the customs and usages of the Roman People*. — 17. **Si . . . conentur**; which case of the conditional, according to ¶ 21. b. II. 2. — **Vim**; what the root? Ans. *Vir*; the *r* lost in the singular. — 18. **Dejecti**, [dejicio]. — **Alii . . . alii**, *some . . . others*; § 207. Rem. 32. (b.); *alii . . . alii* are in apposition with *Helvetii*; R. 4. Rem. 10; see also § 323. (4.). — 19. **Alii . . . possent**, *some trying if they could* [break through] *force a passage by* [ships] *boats united together by numerous rafts constructed, others by the fords of the Rhone, &c.* — 22. **Repulsi**, [repello = re-pelno, ¶ 16. VI. Rem. 3.] — 23. **Destiterunt**, [desisto = de-si-sto, ¶ 16. VI. Rem. 3. N.].

[c. Give the rules for the construction in each sentence in this lesson : § 279.]

2. L. 25. **Angustias** [locōrum], [narrowness of the places] *difficult passes*. — **Sua sponte**, [by their own will] *by their own application*; *sponse*; how irregular? § 94. — 27. **Ut . . . impetrarent**, *that* [he being intercessor] *by his intercession they might obtain their request from the Sequanians*. — 28. **Plurimum potērat**, *had the greatest influence*. — 30. **Induxerat**, [had led into matrimony] *had married*. — 31. **Novis . . . studēbat**, [he was zealous for new things] *was favoring a revolution*; *rebus*, R. 23. Rem. 2. — 32. **Obstrictas**, *under obligation* [obstringo, obstrig-tus, ¶¶ 17. II.; 16. VI. Rem. 3.]. — **Itaque** [ita-que]; what relation does it mark? Ans. *The illative*. — **Rem**, [the thing] *the enterprise*.



Page

13. [d. Numeral Adjectives — their declension and construction : § 117 — 121. Let the scholar become very familiar with the use of both *cardinal* and *ordinal* numbers, in the practice of counting and combining, with great variety.]

[P. 27.] L. 12. **By Cæsar's orders**, [Cæsar ordering it]. — 14. **Ten feet**, &c., [to the height of ten feet]. **Six in**, &c., [to the breadth of, *latitudo*]. — 17. **Prevent**, [*prohibeo*].

## XX.

[a. Syntax : §§ 269—278, or Rules 69—78.

b. Exceptions in declension of the Fourth and Fifth Declensions, and the declension of Compound Nouns : §§ 89—91.]

1. L. 5. **Renunciatur**, [it is reported back] *word is brought back*; i. e. perhaps by scouts. — 5. **Helvetis**; R. 11. Rem. 5. (or perhaps R. 26.). — **Esse**; its subject accusative is *facere*. — 6. **Sequanorum . . . Eduorum . . . Santonum**; determine the geographical position. — 9. **Futurum . . . haberet**, [that it would be] *the result would be attended with great danger* [of] *to the Province*, that it [i. e. the Province] *should have*, &c.; *futurum esse*, § 268. Rem. 4. (b.). — 10. **Locis**; R. 54. Rem. 3; ¶ 23. xxv. — 12. **Magnis itineribus**, [great journeys] *forced marches*; R. 47. — 16. **Centriones . . . Graioceli . . . Caturiges**; ascertain their geographical position. — 18. **Compluribus . . . pulsus**, *these being defeated in many battles*; *his*, R. 57. [absolute with *pulsus*]. — 19. **Quod . . . extremum** [oppidum], *which is the last town of the hither* [nearer] *Province*; i. e. Cisalpine Gaul, in the north of Italy, where Cæsar had just levied his troops.

[c. Review the Rules of Syntax just completed, in three or four lessons, miscellaneously, so that the pupil shall become perfectly familiar with the quotation of each rule by number.]

2. L. 25. **Traduxerant . . . populabantur**, *had transported . . . and were laying waste*; distinguish between the different class of tenses here used. Let the student be in the habit of making such distinctions continually, and also of giving a synopsis of the modes of the tense, both voices : ¶ 20. — 28. **Ita . . . meritos esse**, [saying] *that they had* [in all time] *always* [been so deserving] *deserved so much of the Roman People*. — 29. **Ut . . . agri vastari . . . non debuérint**, *that . . . their country ought not to be laid waste*; *ita . . . ut*, R. 62. Rem. 1. — 31. **Quo Edui**, *that the Edui* 14. **do**. — 4. **Sibi . . . reliqui**, [there is nothing [of that re-



Page

14. maining] left to them] *they have nothing left but the soil of their land*; *sibi*, R. 26; *reliqui*, R. 12. Rem. 3. N. 3. — 5. *Expectandum sibi*, *he must not wait*; *sibi*, R. 25. III.

[P. 27.] L. 22. Was informed, [made certain]. — 23. *Mutual . . . fidelity*; see page 10. line 5. — [P. 28.] L. 3. *Defiles*, [angustiae]. — 4. *Eighth of April*; see page 12. line 7.

## XXI.

[a. Oblique case of Adjectives of the Third Declension: §§ 112—114.]

1. L. 9. *In Rhodānum influit*; R. 33. Rem. 2. — *Incredibile lenitāte*, of remarkable smoothness; R. 11. Rem. 6. — 10. *Fluat*; R. 65. — 13. *Flumen*; R. 33. — *Traduxisse*, [tradūco = trans-duco; ¶ 18. trans]. — 14. *De . . . vigiliā*, [from] at the commencement of the third watch; i. e. at midnight, as the Romans divided the night into four watches. — 15. *Profectus*, [proficiscor]. — 17. *Concidit*; distinguish between *concido* and *concido*. — *Mandārunt*; § 162. 7. (a.). — 18. *Is . . . Tigurinus*, this [village] part, or division, was called *Tigurine*. — 19. *Helvetia*; an adjective here. — 22. *Sive . . . immortalium*, whether by chance or by the will of the, &c. How are *vel . . . vel* related to each other, and what relation do they together mark? — 24. *Pœnas persolvit*, suffers punishment. Distinguish between *dare*, or *persolvere*, *pœnam* and *sumere pœnam*. — 26. *Ultus est*, [ulciscor = ulc-isc-or, ¶ 16. VI. Rem. 3; ultus = ulc-tus, ¶ 17. IV.]. — *Ejus . . . avum*, the grandfather of *Lucius Piso*, his [Cæsar's] father-in-law.

[b. Irregular comparison of Adjectives and Adverbs: §§ 125—127; 194. 4—6.]

2. L. 30. *Faciendum* [esse]. — 33. *Ut . . . transirent*, namely, to cross the river — a complementary clause; in reality, in apposition with the clause *quod ipsi*, &c. — 2. *Bello Cassiāno*, [the Cassian war] in the war with *Cassius*; § 128. 6. (f.) — *Cum . . . agit*, [treats with, &c.] addresses *Cæsar*, [saying]. — 3. *Si . . . faceret*; which case of the conditional? What takes the place of the conclusion or apodosis? Ans. *The infinitive clauses* *itūros* [esse]. &c. — 5. *Bello persēqui*, [to follow with war] to prosecute the war. — 6. *Reminisce-rētur*, [reminiscor = re-men-isc-or, see ¶ 16. VI. Rem. 3.]. — *Et . . . et*, both the former disaster of the Roman People, and, &c.; *incommōdi*, R. 16. — 7. *Quod . . . adortus esset*, because



Page

15. *he had suddenly fallen upon one* [village] *detachment*. — 9. *Ne . . . tribuēret, he should not on that account ascribe it* [with great labor] *too much to his* [Cæsar's] *valor; magno opère, for magnopère, adverbial*. — 10. *Ipsos, [themselves] them; i. e. the Helvetians*. — 12. *Committēret, ut, he should not [commit such a blunder] cause that, &c.* — *Constitissent, they [the Helvetians] had stopped; why in the subjunctive?* — 14. *Aut memoriam, &c., or transmit [to posterity] the memory [of his defeats]*.

[P. 28.] L. 7. *Saying that, &c.; see page 13. line 28.* — 8. *Possessions; see page 13. line 26.* — 14. *Exile, [exsilium]. — Cæsar having heard, [this being heard, Cæsar].* — 17. *Before that, [priusquam, § 263. 3].* — 19. *Favorable position; page 13. line 17.*

## XXII.

[a. Irregular nouns: §§ 92—94.

b. Let there be some review, at every lesson, of those parts of the Grammar most immediately necessary and important.]

1. L. 15. *His; i. e. the Helvetians, through Divico, their ambassador.* — *Eo . . . quòd, that on this account* [less of doubt was given him] *he had [or felt] less doubt because.* — 17. *Tenēret; for the mode, see § 266. 3.* — *Atque . . . accidissent, and that* [he bore it the more heavily by this [much], by which [much] the less they had happened according to the desert of the Roman People] *he felt the more disturbed, the less they had happened, &c.; eo . . . quo, R. 56. Rem. 16. (2.); the subject of accidissent refers to ea res in line 16.* — 18. *Qui . . . cavēre, if they had been conscious [to themselves] of [committing] any injury, they could easily have been on their guard; qui refers to the collective noun Populi Romāni; for its translation in similar positions, see § 206. (17.); the subject of fuisse is cavēre, with which difficile agrees; thus literally [to be on their guard, or that they should have been on their guard, would have been easy.]*

NOTE. Such strict analyses of idiomatic expressions are of the greatest importance to the beginner.

19. *Eo . . . putāret, that they* [i. e. the Roman People] *had been deceived by this, because they neither understood that [any thing] had been committed by them, why they should fear, nor did they think they should fear without a reason.* This difficult sentence needs very careful study. — 21. *Quod si,*



Page

15. [in respect to which, if] *whereas, if*; *quod* is strictly, in such constructions, a relative, referring generally to the foregoing, and an accusative of specification; R. 34. II.; still it may be parsed, loosely, as an adverb, or adverbial accusative; see § 206. (14.) — 22. *Num*; what kind of a question does it introduce? § 198. 11. (b.). — *Injuriarum*; limiting *memoriam*, line 24. — *Quod*; the following clauses, introduced by *quod*, are enumerations of the *injuriæ*. — 25. *Quod . . . pertinere*, *that they are boasting so insolently of their victory, and wondering that he had borne it so long with impunity, tended to the same result*; *quod* here is a complementary conjunction, introducing the clauses as the subject of *pertinere*. — 27. *Consuêsse*, [*consuesco, consuêvi*; infin. perf. *consuevisse* = *consuêsse*, § 162. 7. (a.)]. — 28. *Ex . . . rerum*, *from a change of circumstances*. — 32. *Æduis*; limiting *satisfaciunt*, R. 25.
16. — *Ipsis*; to whom referring, and why used? — 2. *Institutos esse*, *had been instructed*. How does this verb form its complete tenses? ¶ 16. VI. Rem. 2.

[c. Irregular nouns: §§ 94—99.]

2. L. 7. *Coactum habebat*, *had collected*; § 274. Rem. 4; (which construction the author of the Grammar should have extended). — 7. *Qui videant*, *to see*. — 8. *Novissimum agmen*, *the [enemy's] rear*; i. e., what is newest, is last; applied to an army under march; it is the last or rear division. — 11. *Sublati*, *elated*; [*tollo*]. — 12. *Audacius subsistere*, *to take a bolder stand*. — 14. *Ac . . . habebat*, *and was considering it enough*. — 17. *Nostrum primum*, *our van*. — 18. *Interesset*, [*inter-sum*].

[P. 28.] L. 27. *Cæsar had it in mind*; see page 13. line 5. — [P. 29.] L. 3. *Return home*; R. 37. 4. — 5. *War with Cassius*; page 15. line 2. — 6. *Should not be granted*; what construction should be used?

### XXIII.

[a. Derivation of nouns: §§ 100. 101. The scholar should be pressed more closely, at this stage, upon Etymologies, Latin and English. See ¶ 26.]

1. L. 19. *Æduos frumentum*; R. 31; ¶ 23. XII. (3.). — 20. *Publice*, *in the name of the State*. — *Flagitare*, *kept demanding*; for construction, R. 9. Rem. 5. N. 7; *flagitare*, § 187. II. 1. (a.). — 24. *Uti*, [*utor*]. — 25. *Avertèrant*, [*et*] *a quibus*, &c. — 26. *Diem . . . Ædui*, *the Ædui were* [*leading*



Page

16. it along] *delaying, day after day.* — *Conferri . . . dicere, they said it was being collected, it was being brought together, it was on the road.* — *Ducere, dicere*; R. 9. Rem. 5. — 27. *Duci*; *se*, referring to Cæsar, is its subject. — 30. *Divitiāco et Lisco*, [convocātis in his]. — *Qui . . . præerat*, *who* (referring to Liscus) [is placed over] *was invested with the chief magistracy*; *magistrātu*, [§ 89. Rem. 3.] R. 24. — *Quem . . . Ædui*, [which officer] *whom the Ædui call Vir-*  
17. *gobrētus*; an official title. — 1. *Quum*, [id], referring to *frumentum*. — 3. *Magnā . . . parte*, *in a great measure*.

[b. Derivation of nouns: § 102.]

2. L. 6. *Quod . . . tacuerat*, *what he had before been silent about*; *taceo* is here, perhaps, transitive, or *quod* may be referred to R. 34. II. — 10. *Præstare*, *to furnish*. — 11. *Si . . . possint*, *if they* [the Ædui] *cannot any longer hold the sovereignty, &c.* — 13. *Quin . . . sint ereptūri*; for the modes in these clauses, see R. 62. Rem. 10. N. 7; for the tenses, see R. 60. Rem. 7. (1.), (2.). — 16. *A se*, *by him* [Liscus]. — *Quin . . . sese*, *nay even, because he had necessarily communicated* [the things] *these circumstances to Cæsar, he understood, &c.*

[P. 29.] L. 12. *Having given this answer*; page 16. line 4. — 17. *Commanded him to see, &c.*; how does this construction differ from that on page 16. line 7? — 19. *Engage him in battle*, [join battle with him]. — 20. *Unfavorable*, [aliēnus].

## XXIV.

[a. Derivation of adjectives: §§ 128—130.]

1. L. 22. *Ex solo*; i. e. *ex eo solo*, *of him alone*. — 24. *Repērit . . . vera*, *he finds* [what he had said] *was true*, [namely]. — 25. *Magnā . . . gratiā*, *of great personal influence, &c.* — 26. *Portoria . . . habere*, *he had* [bought, or contracted for] *the customs, &c., for a small sum*. — 28. *Licente*, [liceor]. — 32. *Largiter posse*, [was largely influential] *had a wide influence*. — 1. *Homini* [nuptum], *married to a man there*. — 3. *Sororem . . . collocasse*, *after his mother, he had married* [i. e. given her in marriage] *his sister and other relatives among the states*. — 4. *Cupere*, *wishing well*. — *Summam . . . venire*, [was coming into the, &c.] *was entertaining the highest expectation, &c.* — 11. *In quærendo* [= inquirendo] . . . *factum*, *on inquiring* [on what



Page

18. account] *why the equestrian battle, a few days before, had turned out unsuccessfully.* — 13: *Equitatu*, [old dative].

[P. 30.] L. 5. *On the public trust*; page 16. line 20. —

6. *Not at hand*, [suppêto].

## XXV.

[a. Derivation of verbs: § 187.

b. Adverbs, prepositions, conjunctions, interjections: §§ 190—198.]

REMARK. It is not presumed that the scholar, while pursuing these introductory Lessons, *will complete* the Grammar. It is the work of years. Too much should not be attempted at once. It is not expected that all, including Remarks and Notes, referred to in the foregoing Lessons, will be *committed* at this stage, if at all. Much must be left to the discretion of the teacher.]

1. L. 16. *Certissimæ . . . quod*, *most reliable* [things] *facts were added, namely, that, &c.* — 19. *Injussu . . . civitatis*, *without his* [Cæsar's] *orders, or that of his state; injussu*, § 94; *suo*, R. 11. Rem. 3. (b.). — 29. *Cui . . . habebat*, [for] 19, *in whom he was entertaining the highest confidence* [of] *in all things.* — 1. *Ipse*; i. e. Cæsar. — *Statuat*, *may resolve* [upon some punishment].

[c. Give the rules for the position of all the words and clauses of this section: §§ 279. 280.]

2. L. 7. *Ipse*, [Divitiacus]. — 8. *Ille*, [his brother]. — 9. *Suam*, [that of Divitiacus]. — 17. *Uti . . . condonet*, *he pardons both the injury* [of] *done to the Republic and his own wrongs*, [for] *on account of his good will and entreaties.*

[P. 30.] L. 13. *Twenty-fifth*, &c.; page 11. line 17.



# LATIN TABLES.

## I. ORTHOGRAPHY AND ORTHOEPEY.

### ¶ 1. A. THE ALPHABET.

A a, B b, C c, D d, E e, F f, G g, H h, I i, J j, K k,  
L l, M m, N n, O o, P p, Q q, R r, S s, T t, U u, V v,  
X x, Y y, Z z.

### ¶ 2. B. VOCAL ELEMENTS.

{ Vowels,	{	Simple, a, e, i, o, u, y.			
		{ Double,	{ æ, ai, au. ei, eu. œ, oi, yi. (ua, ue, ui, uo, uu.)		
{ Single Consonants,	{ Mutes,		{ Smooth, p, c, k, t. Middle, b, g, d. Rough, ph, f, qu, h, v, th.		
		{ Semivowels,	{ Liquids, l, m, n, r. Sibilant, s.		
			Double Consonants, x, z.		

### CONSONANTS (SECOND ARRANGEMENT).

Orders.	Class I. Labials	Class II. Palatals.	Class III. Linguals.
1. Smooth Mutes,	p,	c, k,	t.
2. Middle Mutes,	b,	g,	d.
3. Rough Mutes,	ph, f,	qu, h, v,	th.
4. Nasals,	m,	ng,	n.
5. Double Consonants,	(ps,)	x,	z.



### ¶ 3. QUANTITY, SYLLABLES, DIVISION OF SYLLABLES, &C.

1. Of Syllables, the  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Ultima} \\ \text{Penult} \\ \text{Antepenult} \\ \text{Initial} \end{array} \right\}$  is the  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{last syllable.} \\ \text{last but one.} \\ \text{last but two.} \\ \text{first syllable.} \end{array} \right\}$
2. Of Quantity, a syllable is  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Long,} \\ \text{Short, or} \\ \text{Common,} \end{array} \right\}$  marked  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{duco.} \\ \text{ago.} \\ \text{unus.} \end{array} \right\}$
3. The Primary Accent of a  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Dissyllable} \\ \text{Polysyllable (with a long penult)} \\ \text{Polysyllable (with a short penult)} \\ \text{Polysyllable (with a common penult)} \\ \text{Genitive in } \textit{ius} \end{array} \right\}$  is on the  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Penult.} \\ \text{Penult.} \\ \text{Antepenult.} \\ \text{Antepenult.} \\ \text{Penult.} \end{array} \right\}$

#### 4. Division of Syllables.

(a.) Au'-la, li'-bri, æ'-ther, per''-e-gri-na'-ti-o, ge-rê'-bat, at'-las, a-gric'-ô-la, cœp'-ê-rat, tol'''-e-ra-bil''-i-ô'-rem, dep'-re-cor, mo'-ne-o, fac'-ê-re, fa''-ci-ê'-bat, pe''-ti-ê'-re, du''-pli-ca'-ti-o, Pub'-li-us, ad''-duc-tis'-que, stel'-la, ad-emp'-ti-o, fe-nes'-tra, trans'-trum, præ-ter'-e-a, prof'-u-it, sub'-ă-go.

(b.) Cedunt, salūbris, odorifēram, magistra, Mnestheus, Ascaniasque, consequitur, bijūgas, pretio, conficio, quærere, petiērunt, aglauris, pulverulenta, fœdēris, Troiūs, Trojugēnas, miserere, respexit, ilicibus, traheremque, exitium, miserebĭtur, miserebiturque, miserrimăque, ædificium, Pompeius, suades, caduceus, machĭna, exaggeratio, Cæsareā, siquĭbus, cogere, coquere.

## II. ETYMOLOGY.

¶ 4 (a.) REMARKS. I. To avoid needless repetition, the tables of paradigms have been constructed with the following ellipses, which will be readily supplied from general rules, viz. :—

1. In the paradigms of NOUNS, —

a.) The *Vocative singular* is omitted whenever it has the same form with the *Nominative*.



- b.) The *Voc. plur.*, because it is always the same with the *Nom.*  
 c.) The *Abl. singular* when like the *Nom.* or *Dat.*, and the *Abl. plur.*, because it is always the same with the *Nom.*  
 d.) The *Acc.* and *Voc. plur.* of the *third, fourth, and fifth* declen., because they are always the same with the *Nom.*  
 e.) The *Acc.* and *Voc.* of the *neut. in all declensions* and both numbers, because they are always the same with the *Nom.*

2. In the paradigms of **ADJECTIVES**, and words similarly inflected, the same ellipses are made as in the corresponding declensions of nouns, with the following additions:—

a.) The *Neuter* is omitted in the *Gen.*, *Dat.*, and *Abl.* in both numbers, because in these cases it never differs from the masculine.

b.) The *Abl. singular* is omitted when like the *Dat.*

II. The following Tables of inflection are not designed to be used *exclusive* of the forms in the Grammar, but to be *supplementary* to them. While the Grammar is, from the first, referred to, to be memorized by the scholar, reference is often made to them both simultaneously, the Tables presenting a more careful analysis of the *formative* part of inflected words, and supplying in many cases very material defects in the Grammar. The Tables are, for the most part, complete in themselves, and will be found convenient and useful, not only for constant reference and comparison, but in particular and general reviews.

## A. TABLE OF DECLENSIONS.

### ¶ 4. I. AFFIXES OF THE FIVE DECLENSIONS.

		First.		Second.		Third.		Fourth.		Fifth.	
		M.		N.		M. F.		N. M.		N.	
S.	N.	ā	s	ūm	s			* ūs		(ū)	ēs
	G.	ae		ī		Is			ūs		eī
	D.	ae		ō		I		uī		(ū)	eī
	Ac.	ām			ēm, (īm)			* ūm		(ū)	ēm
	V.	ā	ē	ūm	s			* ūs		(ū)	ēs
	Ab.	a		ō		ē, (i)		ū		(ū)	ē
P.	N.	ae	ī	ā	ēs	ā, (ia)	ūs		(u)ā	ēs	
	G.	arum		ōrum	ūm, (ium)			uūm		ērūm	
	D.	is	is		ībūs			ībūs, (ūbūs)		ēbūs	
	Ac.	ās	ōs	ā	ēs	ā, (ia)	ūs		(u)ā	ēs	
	V.	ae	ī	ā	ēs	ā, (ia)	ūs		(u)ā	ēs	
	Ab.	is	is		ībus			ībūs, (ūbūs)		ēbūs	



## II. ANALYSIS OF THE AFFIXES.

Connecting Vowels.					Flexible Endings.	
	L.	II.	III.	IV.	V.	
S. N.	a	u	*	(u)	(e)	s. Fem. 1, *. Neut. 2, m; 3 and 4, *.
G.	a	i	*	(u)	(e)	1, e. 2, *. 3, is. 4, s. 5, i.
D.	a	o	*	(u)	(e)	1, e. 2, *. 3, 4, and 5, i.
Ac.	a	u	*	(u)	(e)	m. 3, em (im), (a).
V.	a	e	*	(u)	(e)	{ s. Fem. 1, *. Mas. 2, and Neut. 3, and 4, *. Neut. 2, m.
Ab.	a	o	*	(u)	(e)	3, e. 1, 2, 4, and 5, *.
P. N.	a	i	*	(u)	(e)	{ 1, e. Mas. 2, *. Neut. 2, 3, and 4, a. Mas. 3, es; 4 and 5, s.
G.	a	o	*	(u)	(e)	um.
D.	a	o	*	(u) (i)	(e)	1 and 2, is. 3, 4, and 5, bus.
Ac.	a	o	*	(u)	(e)	s. Neut. 2, 3, and 4, a. Mas. 3, es.
V.	a	i	*	(u)	(e)	{ 1, e. Mas. 2, *. Neut. 2, 3, and 4, a. Mas. 3, es; 4 and 5, s.
Ab.	a	o	*	(u) (i)	(e)	1 and 2, is. 3, 4, and 5, bus.

## ¶ 5. NOUNS OF THE SEVERAL DECLENSIONS.

## (a.) Masculine and Feminine.

	I.	II.	III.	IV.	V.
	<i>A wheel, f.</i>	<i>A boy, m.</i>	<i>A beam, f.</i>	<i>A chariot, m.</i>	<i>A thing, f.</i>
S. N.	ro'-ta	pu'-er	trabs	cur'-rus	res
G.	ro'-tæ	pu'-ë-ri	tra'-bis	cur'-rûs	re'-i
D.	ro'-tæ	pu'-ë-ro	tra'-bi	cur'-rui	re'-i
Ac.	ro'-tam	pu'-ë-rum	tra'-bem	cur'-rum	rem
Ab.			tra'-be	cur'-ru	re
P. N.	ro'-tæ	pu'-ë-ri	tra'-bes	cur'-rus	res
G.	ro-tâ'-rum	pu-e-rô'-rum	tra'-bi-um	cur'-ru-um	re'-rum
D.	ro'-tis	pu'-ë-ris	trab'-î-bus	cur'-rî-bus	re'-bus
Ac.	ro'-tas	pu'-ë-ros			

## (b.) Neuters.

	<i>War.</i>	<i>An animal.</i>	<i>A spit.</i>
S. N.	bel'-lum	an'-î-mal	ve'-ru
G.	bel'-li	an-i-mā'-lis	ve'-rûs
D.	bel'-lo	an-i-mā'-li	
P. N.	bel'-la	an-i-ma'-lia	ver'-u-a
G.	bel-lô'-rum	an-i-ma-lium	ver'-u-um
D.	bel'-lis	an-i-mal-î-bus	ver'-î-bus



## ¶ 6. VARIATIONS IN THE SEVERAL DECLENSIONS.

(a.) *Second Declension.*

	<i>Wind, m.</i>	<i>A field, m.</i>	<i>A god, m.</i>	<i>A son, m.</i>	<i>Virgil, m.</i>
S. N.	ven'-tus	a'-ger	de'-us	fil'-i-us	Vir-gil'-i-us
G.	ven'-ti	a'-gri	de'-i	fil'-i-i	Vir-gil'-i-i
D.	ven'-to	a'-gro	de'-o	fil'-i-o	Vir-gil'-i-o
Ac.	ven'-tum	a'-grum	de'-um	fil'-i-um	Vir-gil'-i-um-
V.	ven'-te		de'-us	fi'-li	Vir-gi'-li
P. N.	ven'-ti	a'-gri	di'-i, di, de'-i	fil'-i-i	
G.	ven-tō'-rum	a-grō'-rum	de-ō'-rum	fil-i-ō'-rum	
D.	ven'-tis	a'-gris	di'-is, dis, de'-is	fil'-i-is	
Ac.	ven'-tos	a'-gros	de'-os	fil'-i-os	

(b.) *Third Declension.*

## 1. LABIAL.

## 2. PALATAL.

	<i>A stem, f.</i>	<i>A city, f.</i>	<i>Peace, f.</i>	<i>A judge, c.</i>	<i>A law, f.</i>	<i>Snow, f.</i>
S. N.	stirps	urbs	pax	ju'-dex	lex	nix
G.	stir'-pis	ur'-bis	pa'-cis	ju'-di-cis	le'-gis	ni'-vis
D.	stir'-pi	ur'-bi	pa'-ci	ju'-di-ci	le'-gi	ni'-vi
Ac.	stir'-pem	ur'-bem	pa'-cem	ju'-di-cem	le'-gem	ni'-vem
Ab.	stir'-pe	ur'-be	pa'-ce	ju'-di-ce	le'-ge	ni'-ve
P. N.	stir'-pes	ur'-bes	pa'-ces	ju'-di-ces	le'-ges	ni'-ves
G.	stir'-pi-um	ur'-bi-um	* *	ju'-di-cum	le'-gum	niv'-i-um
D.	stir'-pl-bus	ur'-bi-bus	pac'-i-bus	ju'-dic'-i-bus	le'-gi-bus	niv'-i-bus

## 3. LINGUALS.

	<i>Adamant, m.</i>	<i>An acorn, f.</i>	<i>A soldier, c.</i>	<i>Night, f.</i>	<i>Tyrus, f.</i>
S. N.	ad'-ā-mas	glans	mi'-les	nox	Ti'-ryns
G.	ad-a-man'-tis	glan'-dis	mil'-i-tis	noc'-tis	Ti-ryn'-this
D.	ad-a-man'-ti	glan'-di	mil'-i-ti	noc'-ti	Ti-ryn'-thi
Ac.	ad-a-man'-ta	glan'-dem	mil'-i-tem	noc'-tem	Ti-ryn'-them
Ab.	ad-a-man'-te	glan'-de	mil'-i-te	noc'-te	Ti-ryn'-the
P. N.	ad-a-man'-tes	glan'-des	mil'-i-tes	noc'-tes	
G.	ad-a-man'-tum	glan'-dum	mil'-i-tum	noc'-tium	
D.	ad-a-man'-tī-bus	glan'-dī-bus	mi-lit'-i-bus	noc'-tī-bus	

## 4. LIQUIDS.

## (a.) m, n.

	<i>Winter, f.</i>	<i>A virgin, f.</i>	<i>Blood, m.</i>	<i>A comb, m.</i>	<i>Flesh, f.</i>
S. N.	hi'-ems	vir'-go	san'-guis	pec'-ten	ca'-ro
G.	hi'-ē-mis	vir'-gī-nis	san'-guī-nis	pec'-tī-nis	car'-nis
D.	hi'-ē-mi	vir'-gī-ni	san'-guī-ni	pec'-tī-ni	car'-ni
Ac.	hi'-ē-mem	vir'-gī-nem	san'-guī-nem	pec'-tī-nem	car'-nem
Ab.	hi'-ē-me	vir'-gī-ne	san'-guī-ne	pec'-tī-ne	car'-ne
P. N.	hi'-ē-mes	vir'-gī-nes	san'-guī-nes	pec'-tī-nes	car'-nes
G.	hi'-ē-mum	vir'-gī-num	san'-guī-num	pec'-tī-num	car'-num
D.	hi-em'-i-bus	vir-gin'-i-bus	san-guin'-i-bus	pec-tin'-i-bus	car'-nī-bus



## (b.) 1, r.

	<i>A consul, m.</i>	<i>Honor, m.</i>	<i>A flower, m.</i>	<i>Dust, m.</i>	<i>A father, m.</i>
S. N.	con'-sul	ho'-nor	flos	pul'-vis	pa'-ter
G.	con'-sū-lis	ho-nō'-ris	flo'-ris	pul'-vē-ris	pa'-tris
D.	con'-sū-li	ho-nō'-ri	flo'-ri	pul'-vē-ri	pa'-tri
Ac.	con'-sū-lem	ho-nō'-rem	flo'-rem	pul'-vē-rem	pa'-trem
Ab.	con'-sū-le	ho-nō'-re	flo'-re	pul'-vē-re	pa'-tre
P. N.	con'-sū-les	ho-nō'-res	flo'-res	pul'-vē-res	pa'-tres
G.	con'-sū-lum	ho-nō'-rum	flo'-rum	pul'-vē-rum	pa'-trum
D.	con-su'-lī-bus	ho-nor'-ī-bus	flor'-ī-bus	pul-ver'-ī-bus	pat'-rī-bus

## ¶ 7. 5. MONOSYLLABIC AND ANALOGOUS ROOTS.

	<i>Hunger, f.</i>	<i>A cloud, f.</i>	<i>An ear, f.</i>	<i>Bread, m.</i>	<i>An axe, f.</i>
S. N.	fa'-mes	nu'-bes	au'-ris	pa'-nis	se-cū'-ris
G.	fa'-mis	nu'-bis	au'-ris	pa'-nis	se-cū'-ris
D.	fa'-mi	nu'-bi	au'-ri	pa'-ni	se-cū'-ri
Ac.	fa'-mem	nu'-bem	au'-rem	pa'-nem	se-cū'-rim
Ab.	fa'-me	nu'-be	au'-re	pa'-ne	se-cū'-ri
P. N.	fa'-mes	nu'-bes	au'-res	pa'-nes	se-cū'-res
G.	fa'-mī-um	nu'-bī-um	au'-rī-um	pa'-nī-um	se-cū'-rī-um
D.	fam'-ī-bus	nu'-bī-bus	au'-rī-bus	pan'-ī-bus	se cu'-rī-bus

## 6. NEUTERS.

	<i>The sea.</i>	<i>Milk.</i>	<i>Honey.</i>	<i>Body.</i>	<i>An oak.</i>	<i>A funeral.</i>
S. N.	ma'-re	lac	mel	cor-pus	ro-bor	fu'-nus
G.	ma'-ris	lac'-tis	mel'-lis	cor-pō-ris	rob'-ō-ris	fu'-nē-ris
D.	ma'-ri	lac'-ti	mel'-li	cor-pō-ri	rob'-ō-ri	fu'-nē-ri
Ab.	ma'-ri	lac'-te	mel'-le	cor-pō-re	rob'-ō-re	fu'-nē-re
P. N.	ma'-ri-a	lac'-ta	mel'-la	cor-pō-ra	rob'-ō-ra	fu'-nē-ra
G.	ma'-rī-um	lac'-tī-um	mel'-lī-um	cor-pō-rum	rob'-ō-rum	fu'-nē-rum
D.	mar'-ī-bus	lac'-tī-bus	mel'-lī-bus	cor-por-ī-bus	ro-bor'-ī-bus	fu-ner'-ī-bus

## ¶ 8. ADJECTIVES.

## (a.) First and Second Declensions.

	<i>High.</i>			<i>Rough.</i>		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
S. N.	al'-tus,	al'-ta,	al'-tum.	as'-per,	as'-pē-ra,	as'-pē-rum.
G.	al'-ti,	al'-tæ.		as'-pē-ri,	as'-pē-ræ.	
D.	al'-tū,	al'-tæ.		as'-pē-ro,	as'-pē-ræ.	
Ac.	al'-tum,	al'-tam.		as'-pē-rum,	as'-pē-ram.	
V.	al'-te.					
P. N.	al'-ti,	al'-tæ,	al'-ta.	as'-pē-ri,	as'-pē-ræ,	as'-pē-ra.
G.	al-tō'-rum,	al-tā'-rum.		as-pe-rō'-rum,	as-pe-rā'-rum.	
D.	al'-tis.			as'-pē-ris.		
Ac.	al'-tos,	al'-tas.		as'-pē-ros,	as'-pē-ras.	



	<i>Black.</i>			<i>Alone.</i>		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
S. N.	ni'-ger,	ni'-gra,	ni'-grum.	so'-lus,	so'-la,	so'-lum.
G.	ni'-gri,	ni'-græ.			so'-li-us.	
D.	ni'-gro,	ni'-græ.			so'-li.	
Ac.	ni'-grum,	ni'-gram.		so'-lum,	so'-lam.	
V.				so'-le.		
Ab.				so'-lo.		
P. N.	ni'-gri,	ni'-græ,	ni'-gra.	so'-li,	so'-læ,	so'-la.
G.	ni-grō'-rum,	ni-grā'-rum.		so-lō'-rum,	so-lā'-rum.	
D.		ni'-gris.			so'-lis.	
Ac.	ni'-gros,	ni'-gras.		so'-los,	so'-las.	

(b.) *Third Declension.*

	<i>Numerous.</i>			<i>Short.</i>	
	M.	F.	N.	M. F.	N.
S. N.	cel'-ē-ber,	cel'-ē-bris,	cel'-ē-bre.	bre'-vis,	bre'-ve.
G.		cel'-ē-bris.		bre'-vis.	
D.		cel'-ē-bri.		bre'-vi.	
Ac.	cel'-ē-brem,	cel'-ē-brem.		bre'-vem.	
P. N.	cel'-ē-bres,	cel'-ē-bres,	ce-leb'-ri-a.	bre'-ves,	bre'-vi-a.
G.		ce-leb'-ri-um.		bre'-vi-um.	
D.		ce-leb'-rī-bus.		brev'-i-bus.	

	<i>Higher.</i>		<i>Loving.</i>		<i>That, it.</i>		
	M. F.	N.	M. F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
S. N.	al'-ti-or,	al'-ti-us.	a'-mans,	a'-mans.	il'-le,	il'-la,	il'-lud.
G.	al-ti-ō'-ris.		a-man'-tis.		il'-li'-us.		
D.	al-ti-ō'-ri.		a-man'-ti.		il'-li.		
Ac.	al-ti-ō'-rem.		a-man'-tem.		il'-lum,	il'-lam.	
Ab.	al-ti-ō'-re(i).		a-man'-te(i).		il'-lo.		
P. N.	al-ti-ō'-res,	al-ti-ō'-ra.	a-man'-tes,	a-man'-ti-a.	il'-li,	il'-læ,	il'-la.
G.	al-ti-ō'-rum.		a-man'-ti-um.		il-lō'-rum,	il-lā'-rum.	
D.	al-ti-or'-i-bus.		a-man'-tī-bus.		il'-lis.		
Ac.					il'-los,	il'-las.	

## ¶ 9. EUPHONIC LAWS OF DECLENSION.

The *euphonic changes* of Declension have respect to the formation of the nonnominative, masculine, feminine and neuter, particularly of the *third* declension, and may be comprehended principally in the following cases: —

I. The appropriate ending of the *nominative singular*, of masculine and feminine nouns and adjectives, is *s*: ¶ 4.

II. (1.) A labial mute before *s* unites with it without change; (2.) a palatal forms *x*; (3.) a lingual is dropped; (4.) when a liquid comes before *s*, either the liquid or *s* is



dropped, sometimes both ; as, (1.) *stirps, stirpis* ; *trabs, trabis* ; (2.) *pax, pacis* ; *rex, regis* ; (3.) *miles, militis* ; *lapis, lapidis* ; (4.) *honor, honoris* ; *flos, floris* ; *sermo, sermōnis* ; *sanguis, sanguinis* ; *virgo, virginis*.

REMARK 1. Of liquids, (a.) in the *Second Decl.*, *s* after *r* is uniformly dropped ; (b.) in the *Third Decl.*, (1.) *s* after *l* is dropped ; (2.) *m* unites with *s* without change ; (3.) *ns* are more frequently both dropped, sometimes one only ; (4.) *s* after *r* is more frequently dropped ; as, (a.) *puer, pueri* ; (b.) (1.) *consul, consulis* ; (2.) *hiems, hiemis* ; (3.) *sermo, sermōnis* ; *caro, carnis*, (*ns* dropped in the theme, and *o* added, perhaps by analogy) ; *sanguis, sanguinis* ; (4.) *honor, honoris* ; *pater, patris* ; but *flos, floris*.

Exc. The combinations *ls, ns, rs*, are sometimes allowed, particularly in monosyllables and verbal adjectives ; as, *puls, gens, ars, amans*.

REM. 2. Some roots, mostly monosyllabic, add *s* to the root increased by a vowel — *ē* or *ī*. ¶ 7. 5.

III. Neuter nouns and adjectives in the *singular* have appropriately no affix ; as, *animal, animālis* ; *caput, capitis* ; *lac, lactis*.

Exc. Neuters singular of the *Second Decl.* affix *um* ; neuters plural of all declensions affix *a* or *ia* ; as, *regnum, regnū* ; *animal, animalia* ; *cornu, cornua*.

REMARK 1. On account of euphonic preferences, the root of neuters is variously modified in the nominative, as follows : —

(1.) Some roots ending in a consonant add *e* ; some drop the final consonant ; those ending in two consonants uniformly drop the latter ; as, *mare, maris* ; *sedile, sedilis* ; *dogma, dogmātis* ; *hydromeli, hydromelitis* ; *lac, lactis* ; *mel, mellis*.

(2.) Most roots ending in *r* (perhaps to distinguish them from corresponding masculine terminations) change *r* to *s*, and the preceding vowel — *ē* or *ō*, to *ū* ; as, *fœdus, fœdēris* ; *genus, genēris* ; *corpus, corpōris* ; *nemus, nemōris*.

(3.) In adjectives of one termination *s* is assumed ; as, *audax, audācis* ; *amans, amantis*.

IV. *Vowel changes* in the theme of all genders are frequent before the characteristic ; as, (1.) roots whose characteristic is *p, b, c, d*, or *t*, frequently change *ī* to *ē* ; (2.) neuters whose characteristic is *r*, usually change *ē* and *ō* to *ū* ; (3.) with *r* characteristic, a few masculines change *ē* to *ī* ; (4.) with *n* characteristic, *ī* is often changed to *ō* ; except neuters, which change *ī* to *ē* ; as, (1.) *princeps, principis* ; *cælebs, cælibis* ; *judex, judicis* ; *obses, obsēdis* ; *miles, militis* ; (2.) *genus,*







*Future.*

$\begin{matrix} 1 & 2 \\ a, \bar{e}, \end{matrix} \}$	$bl \left\{ \begin{matrix} (m) o, s, t; \\ mus, tis, (u) nt: \end{matrix} \right\}$	$\left\{ \begin{matrix} r, (e) ris (re), tur; \\ mini, (u) ntur. \end{matrix} \right\}$
$\begin{matrix} 3 & 4 \\ e (a), i\bar{e} (ia) \end{matrix} \}$	$m, s, t; mus, tis, nt:$	$\left\{ \begin{matrix} r, ris (re), tur; \\ mini, ntur. \end{matrix} \right\}$

*Perfect.*

$(a, \bar{e}, I) v, u, s, *$	$\left\{ \begin{matrix} I, isti, It; \\ \bar{I}mus, istis, \\ \bar{e}runt (\bar{e}re): \end{matrix} \right\}$	$\left\{ \begin{matrix} p.p. sum, es, est; \\ sumus, \\ estis, sunt. \end{matrix} \right\}$
------------------------------	---	---

*Pluperfect.*

$(a, \bar{e}, I) v, u, s, *$	$\left\{ \begin{matrix} \bar{e}ram, \bar{e}ras, \bar{e}rat; \\ er\bar{a}m\bar{u}s, \\ er\bar{a}tis, \bar{e}rant: \end{matrix} \right\}$	$\left\{ \begin{matrix} p.p. \bar{e}ram, \bar{e}ras, \bar{e}rat; \\ er\bar{a}mus, \\ er\bar{a}tis, \bar{e}rant. \end{matrix} \right\}$
------------------------------	---	--

*Future Perfect.*

$(a, \bar{e}, I) v, u, s, *$	$\left\{ \begin{matrix} \bar{e}ro, \bar{e}ris, \bar{e}rit; \\ er\bar{I}mus, \\ er\bar{I}tis, \bar{e}rint: \end{matrix} \right\}$	$\left\{ \begin{matrix} p.p. \bar{e}ro, \bar{e}ris, \bar{e}rit; \\ er\bar{I}mus, \\ \bar{e}ritis, \bar{e}rint. \end{matrix} \right\}$
------------------------------	--	---

## 2. SUBJUNCTIVE.

*Present.*

$\begin{matrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 \\ e, ea, a, ia \end{matrix} \}$	$m, s, t; mus, tis, nt:$	$\left\{ \begin{matrix} r, ris (re), tur; \\ mini, ntur. \end{matrix} \right\}$
--	--------------------------	---

*Imperfect.*

$a, \bar{e}, \bar{e}, I \}$	$re \left\{ \begin{matrix} m, s, t; \\ mus, tis, nt: \end{matrix} \right\}$	$\left\{ \begin{matrix} r, ris (re), tur; \\ mini, ntur. \end{matrix} \right\}$
-----------------------------	---	---

*Perfect.*

$(a, \bar{e}, I) v, u, s, *$	$\left\{ \begin{matrix} \bar{e}rim, \bar{e}ris, \bar{e}rit; \\ \bar{e}rimus, \\ \bar{e}ritis, \bar{e}rint: \end{matrix} \right\}$	$\left\{ \begin{matrix} p.p. sim, sis, sit; \\ simus, \\ sitis, sint. \end{matrix} \right\}$
------------------------------	---	--

*Pluperfect.*

$(a, \bar{e}, I) v, u, s, *$	$\left\{ \begin{matrix} issem, isses, isset; \\ iss\bar{e}mus, \\ iss\bar{e}tis, issent: \end{matrix} \right\}$	$\left\{ \begin{matrix} p.p. essem, esses, esset; \\ ess\bar{e}mus, \\ ess\bar{e}tis, essent. \end{matrix} \right\}$
------------------------------	---	--

## 3. IMPERATIVE, INFINITIVE, AND PARTICIPLE.

*Present.**Future.**Perfect.**Imperative.*

$\begin{matrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 \\ \bar{a}, \bar{e}, \bar{e}, I, u, I, iu \end{matrix} \}$	$*, te: re; mini.$	$to, to; tote, nto: tor, tor; mini, ntor.$
--	--------------------	--

*Infinitive.*

$\begin{matrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 \\ \bar{a}, \bar{e}, \bar{e}, I \end{matrix} \}$	$re: ri (I).$	$f. a. p. esse; act. sup. iri. (\bar{a}, \bar{e}, I) v, u, s, * \left\{ \begin{matrix} isse; \\ p.p. esse. \end{matrix} \right\}$
--	---------------	---

*Participle.*

$\begin{matrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 \\ a, o, e (ie), ie \end{matrix} \}$	$nts (ns):$	$(s) turus; ndus.$	$(s) tus.$
--	-------------	--------------------	------------



## 4. GERUND AND SUPINE.

1. The Gerund is the future passive participle used substantively, of the neuter gender, and, as a verbal noun, is usually active.

2. The Supine is also a verbal noun, formed from the perfect passive participle, either in the accusative or ablative case, — the former, active; the latter, passive.

## ¶ 12. GENERAL PRINCIPLES OF CONJUGATION.

I. The *Personal endings*, *m*, *s*, *t*, are probably pronominal, i. e. are the roots and the representatives of the personal pronouns, *ego* (mei), *tu* (sv), *to*, (perhaps; or see Crosby's Greek Grammar, §§ 143, 171, 172), and *mus*, *tis*, *nt*, *r*, *ris*, *tur*, &c., are only variations of these, to form the *plural* and the *passive*, *singular* and *plural*. They are used alike in all the tenses of the *personal modes*. The following table may assist in the analysis: —

Signs.		Active.		Passive.	
		S.	P.	S.	P.
The personal signs	} are { <i>m</i> , <i>s</i> ( <i>t</i> ), <i>t</i> : <i>s</i> , <i>n</i> : <i>r</i> :	{ 1st per. <i>m</i> , <i>mus</i> :		<i>r</i> ,	<i>mur</i> .
The plural signs		{ 2d per. <i>s</i> , <i>tis</i> :		<i>ris</i> (re,)	<i>mñi</i> .
The passive sign is		{ 3d per. <i>t</i> , <i>nt</i> :		<i>tur</i> ,	<i>ntur</i> .

REMARK. Both the plural sign, *s*, and the passive, *r*, are *affixed* to the *personal* signs by a euphonic vowel — *ü* or *i*; the plural sign, *n*, is *prefixed* to the personal sign; the personal sign is omitted in the 1st, and sometimes in the 2d per. sing., *pass*, and the plural sign in the 1st per. plur. *pass*.; *mñi*, of the 2d per. plur. *pass*., is a euphonic device, apparently arbitrary.

II. The Personal endings are affixed to the root of the verb by one of the euphonic or connecting vowels, *ä*, *ê*, *ë*, *ï*, *u*, *î*. Sometimes two are united. Verbs are usually divided by grammarians, for convenience of reference, into four different conjugations, as they adopt one or the other of these connecting vowels, §§ 149. 2; 150. 5.

NOTE. Some grammarians regard verbs of the *first*, *second*, and *fourth* conjugations as *pure* verbs, and the vowels *a*, *e*, *i*, respectively, as characteristics of the root, and not euphonic additions. There is much plausibility in this theory, and it is supported by good authority; still, it has not been adopted by our leading school grammars, nor do I think it yet quite settled. I have chosen, therefore, after some hesitation, not to deviate from the



teachings of the grammar in this respect. If, however, any choose to regard these vowels as a part of the root, and these verbs as pure verbs, it will be easy to see how the *nude personal* terminations are attached directly, without any euphonic assistance.

These vowels maintain great regularity in the same verb; the occasional vowel changes in the same tense, and in different modes and tenses must be learned by observation. The following remarks and table, however, may assist the learner.

REMARK 1. The connecting vowel of the *first person, pres. ind., act.* and *pass.*, of all the conjugations, and the fut. of the 1st and 2d conj., is *o*; in which case the personal sign is omitted; the 2d and 4th conjugations prefix to the *o* the regular connective.

REM. 2. The connective *ā*, of the 1st conj., becomes *ē* in the pres. subj.; *ē*, *ī*, *u*, of the 3d conj., fluctuate; yet notice, we have in the pres., ind. and imper., *u* only before the plural sign *n*; *ē* only before the passive sign *r*, which also prefers *ē* to *ī* in the future of the 1st and 2d conj.; in the imp. ind. we have *ē*; in the imp. subj., and inf., *ē*; in the pres. subj., *ā*. Verbs in *io*, of the third conj., have a double connective, the same as the 4th conj., § 159.

REM. 3. The *i* of the 4th conj. assumes *u* before the plur. sign *n*, — *ē* in the imp. and fut. ind., and *ā* in the pres. subj.; *ē* also of the 2d conj., assumes *ā* in the pres. subj.

### ¶13. SIGNS AND MODE VOWELS.

#### 1. Personal, &c., Signs.

Per.	} m, s (t), t.	
Plur.		} s, n.
Pass.		

#### 2. Tense Signs.

Per.	} m, s (t), t.	Imp. ind.	{ ba;	pres. inf.	{ re, ri.	
Plur.		} s, n.	Fut. ind.	{ bi (e);	pres. part.	{ nt (ns).
Pass.			r.		Imp. subj.	

#### 3. Mode Vowels.

Conj.		Pres.	Imp.
Ind.	} 1. ā, 2. ē, 3. ē, ī, u, 4. ī,	} subj.; {	ē;    āre.
Imp.			eā;    ēre.
Inf.			ā;    ěre.
Pr. and f. part.;			iā;    ire.

### ¶14. COMPLETE TENSES.

III. The formation of the *complete tenses* in every language deserves attention. In Latin, “to mark the state consequent upon the completion of an action,” the root of the verb receives a peculiar increment, and takes as an *affix* a form of the auxiliary verb *sum*, which not only distinguishes the per-



son and number of the subject, but also marks the *time* of completion; as, *scripsi epistolam*, *I have a letter* — (it is) *written*. *Scripseram epistolam*, *I had a letter* — (it was) *written* [before the stage arrived,] &c.

The root of the verb, to mark the completion of the action, may be protracted in *three* ways, — (1.) *by the addition of certain letters*, as *v*, *u*, or *s*; (2.) *by lengthening the root vowel*; (3.) *by reduplication*. The *affix* of the *perf. act.* — a complete pres. — is *ī*, *isti*, *it*, &c., which we shall assume, for want of positive proof, to be euphonic variations, or substitutes, of *sum*, *es*, *est*, &c.; of the *pluperf. act.* — a complete past — is *eram*, *eras*, *erat*, &c., the imp. of the verb *sum*; of the *fut. perf. act.* — a complete fut. — is *ero*, *eris*, *erit*, &c., the fut. of the verb *sum*: so also the subj., perf. and pluperf., and the perf. infin. act. See also the passive of this class of tenses, compounded of the perf. part. and nearly the corresponding forms of the auxiliary *sum*.

Other peculiarities of this formation we leave to grammarians. The table which we give below is divided into *distinct* and *incorporated* modes, in the latter of which it is convenient to include the fut. act. and pass. participles, though they do not belong to complete tenses.

NOTE. The table itself will be a table of signs for this class of tenses.

## ¶ 15. MODES OF INCREASING THE ROOT.

### (a.) *Distinct Modes.*

		REMARKS.
1	} by {	v takes the regular connective; <i>u</i> and <i>s</i> omit it. The vowel is sometimes changed; as, <i>ago</i> , <i>ēgi</i> ; <i>facio</i> , <i>fēci</i> . The first consonant with <i>e</i> ( <i>i</i> ) or the root vowel; as, <i>do</i> , <i>dēdi</i> ; <i>curro</i> , <i>cucurri</i> .
2		
3		

### (b.) *Incorporated Modes.*

P. p.	} by adding {	t (s)	With <i>v</i> in the distinct mode, <i>t</i> and <i>tur</i> take the regular connec.; with <i>u</i> , they take <i>t</i> , or omit it; with <i>s</i> , and when the vowel is lengthened, and when the root is reduplicated, they omit it; <i>nd</i> takes the regular connec.
F. a. p.		tur (sur)	
F. p. p.		nd.	



## ¶ 16. EXAMPLES OF CONJUGATION.

I. *With increments in v.*

## a. 1 CONJUGATION.

Arō, arāre, arāvi, arātus, aratūrus, arandus, *plough.*

Cremo, cremāre, cremāvi, cremātus, crematūrus, cremandus,  
*burn down.*

So rogo, *ask*; ligo, *bind*; paro, *procure*; oro, *pray*; no,  
*swim*; &c.

## b. 2 CONJUGATION.

Deleo, delēre, delēvi, delētus, deletūrus, delendus, *blot out.*

Neo, nēre, nēvi, nētus, netūrus, nendus, *spin.*

So adolesco (adoleo), *grow up*; aboleo, *abolish*; fleo,  
*weep*; &c.

## c. 3 CONJUGATION.

Peto, petēre, petīvi, petītus, petitūrus, petendus, *seek.*

Cupio, cupēre, cupīvi, cupītus, cupitūrus, cupiendus, *desire.*

So arcesso, *send for*; capesso, *seize*; sino, *permit*; sero,  
*sow*; &c.

## d. 4 CONJUGATION.

Finio, finīre, finīvi, finītus, finitūrus, finiendus, *finish.*

Munio, munīre, munīvi, munitus, munitūrus, muniendus,  
*fortify.*

So punio, *punish*; nutrio, *nourish*; scio, *know*; lenio,  
*mitigate*; &c.

II. *Increments in u.*

## a. 1 CONJUGATION.

Domo, domāre, domui, domītus, domitūrus, domandus, *tame.*

Sono, sonāre, sonui, (sonītus), sonatūrus, sonandus, *sound.*

So crepo, *rattle*; cubo, *lie down*; veto, *forbid*; tonο, *thun-*  
*der*; &c.

## b. 2 CONJUGATION.

Habeo, habēre, habui, habītus, habitūrus, habendus, *have.*

Doceo, docere, docui, doctus, doctūrus, docendus, *teach.*

So moneo, *admonish*; mereo, *deserve*; teneo, *hold*; doleo,  
*grieve*; &c.



## c. 3 CONJUGATION.

Alo, alĕre, alui, altus (alĭtus), altŭrus, alendus, *nourish*.

Consŭlo, consulĕre, consului, consultus, consultŭrus, consu-  
lendus, *consult*.

So colo, *cultivate*; rapio, *snatch*; fremo, *roar*; gemo,  
*groan*; &c.

## d. 4 CONJUGATION.

Aperio, aperĭre, aperui, apertus, apertŭrus, aperiendus, *open*.

Salio, salĭre, salui (salii), saltus, saltŭrus, saliendus, *leap*.

So aperio, *cover*; amicio (amicui or xi), *clothe*; and per-  
*haps others*.

III. *Increment in s.*

## a. 2 CONJUGATION.

Ardeo, ardĕre, arsi, arsus, arsŭrus, ardens, *burn*.

Augeo, augĕre, auxi, auctus, auctŭrus, augendus, *increase*.

So suadeo, *advise*; rideo, *laugh*; indulgeo, *indulge*; hæreo,  
*stick*; &c.

## b. 3 CONJUGATION.

Carpo, carpĕre, carpsi, carptus, carptŭrus, carpendus, *pluck*.

Nubo, nubĕre, nupsi (nupta sum), nuptus, nuptŭrus, nu-  
bendus, *marry*.

So duco, *lead*; rego, *rule*; figo, *fix*; jungo, *join*; dico,  
*say*; &c.

## c. 4 CONJUGATION.

Vincio, vincĭre, vinxi, vinctus, vinctŭrus, vincendus, *bind*.

Fulcio, fulcĭre, fulsi, fultus, fultŭrus, fulciendus, *prop*.

So farcio, *cram*; haurio, *draw*; sancio, *ratify*; sarcio, *patch*.

IV. *Increments by lengthening Root Vowel.*

## a. 1 CONJUGATION.

Jŭvo, juvĕre, jŭvi, jŭtus, jutŭrus, juvandus, *help*.

## b. 2 CONJUGATION.

Sĕdeo, sedĕre, sĕdi, sessus, sessŭrus, sedendus, *sit*.

Vĭdeo, vidĕre, vĭdi, visus, visŭrus, videndus, *see*.

So fŏveo, *cherish*; mŏveo, *move*; fĕveo, *favor*; vŏveo,  
*vow*; &c.



## c. 3 CONJUGATION.

Căpio, căpěre, cēpi, captus, captūrus, capiendus, *take*.

Ăgo, ăgěre, ăgi, actus, actūrus, agendus, *drive*.

So ădo, *eat*; ămo, *buy*; lěgo, *read*; lūdo, *play*; mitto  
(mīt), *send*; &c.

## d. 4 CONJUGATION.

Vēnio, vėnīre, vēni, ventus, ventūrus, veniendus, *come*.

V. *Increments by Reduplication.*

## a. 1 CONJUGATION.

Do, dăre, dēdi, dātus, datūrus, dandus, *give*.

Sto, stăre, stēti, status, statūrus, standus, *stand*.

So the compounds of do and sto.

## b. 2 CONJUGATION.

Mordeo, morděre, mōmordi, morsus, morsūrus, mordendus,  
*bite*.

Tondeo, tonděre, tōtondi, tonsus, tonsūrus, tondendus, *shear*.

So pendeo, *hang*; spondeo, *promise*.

## c. 3 CONJUGATION.

Cædo, cæděre, cēcīdi, cæsus, cæsūrus, cædendus, *cut*.

Tango, tangěre, tētīgi, tactus, tacturus, tangendus, *touch*.

So cano, *sing*; cado, *fall*; curro, *run*; pario, *bring forth*; &c.

VI. *Cases not strictly included above.*

Some few verbs, mostly of the third conjugation, receive no increment in the complete tenses. In most of these the root vowel is either long by nature or by position; as, ico, *strike*; sīdo, sīdi, *sit down*; lambo, lambi, *lick*; verito, verti, *turn*; but bībo, bībi, *drink*; findo, fidi, *cleave*; comperio, compēri, *open*.

REMARK 1. (1.) Many verbs fluctuate between two or more modes of increment; (2.) many syncopate the increment letter *v*, together, more frequently, with the following vowel, § 162. 7. (a.); (3.) for other syncopations in these tenses, see § 162. 7. (b.), (c.), (d.); (4.) some are variable with regard to the connecting vowel before *t* and *tur* (p. p. and f. a. p.); as, (1.) neco, necāvī or necui, *kill*; absorbeo, absorbui or absorpsi, *suck*;



pango, panxi or pēgi, *drive*; &c.; (4.) seco, sectus, but secatūrus, *cut*; pario, partus, but paritūrus, *bring forth*; poto, potātus or potus, *drink*; sero, sēvi, sātus, *sow*.

REM. 2. If the theme root end in *v* or *u*, (by analogy perhaps) there is no change in forming the complete tenses, except that a short vowel before *v* is lengthened; as, jūvo, jūvi, *assist*; volvo, volvi, *roll*; mōveo, mōvi, *move*; acuo, acui, *sharpen*; arguo, argui, *accuse*. So sometimes when the root ends in *s*; as, facesso, facessi, *execute*; pinso, pinsi, *pound*.

REM. 3. The complete tenses are often formed from an older and simpler root of the verb, which, in the other tenses, is strengthened by one or more letters. The strengthening letters most frequently used are *sc* or *isc*, *n* (*m*), *t*; as, nosco, novi, *know*; ulciscor, ultus, *avenge*; fundo, fudi, *pour*; rumpo, rupi, *break*; plecto, plexi (plexui), *plait*.

NOTE. Some roots are reduplicated in the present; as, gigno, genui; sisto, stiti.

REM. 4. Metathesis takes place in the complete tenses of some roots ending in *r*, with sometimes a vowel change; as, sperno (*r. sper*), sprēvi, *spurn*; tero, trivi, *rub*; sterno (*r. ster*), strāvi, *strew*.

REM. 5. In fluo, struo, &c., *s* unites with a palatal breathing, and forms *x*; as, fluo (*r. fluh*), fluxi, *flow*; struo (*r. struh*), struxi, *strew*, (cf. traho, traxi; vivo, vixi; and the noun nix, nivis.)

REM. 6. The p. p. and the f. a. p. prefer *s* to *t* in all lingual roots and in some liquid and palatal roots; as, cedo, cessus, cessurus; curro, cursus; premo, pressus; figo, fixus.

NOTE. *N*, in pono, before *u*, in the perf. and in the part. is changed to *s*; as, pono, posui, positus. Other irregularities of conjugation we leave to grammarians.

## ¶ 17. EUPHONIC CHANGES OF CONSONANTS. [¶ 2.]

### (a.) Before *t* and *s* in Complete Tenses.

I. A labial mute before *s* forms with it *ps*; a palatal, *x*; and a lingual is dropped or changed to *s*; as, nubo, nupsi, *marry*; jungo, junxi, *join*; ludo, lusi, *play*; cedo, cessi, *yield*.

II. Before a lingual mute (*t*), a labial or palatal becomes coördinate; as, nubo, nuptus; jungo, junctus; veho, vectus; coquo, coctus.

III. The liquids *m* and *r*, before *s* and *t*, are either assimilated, or *m* assumes *p*, and *r* is sometimes dropped; as, premo, pressi, pressus, *press*; uro, ussi, ustus, *burn*; sumo, sumpsī, sumptus, *take*; hæreo, hæsi, *stick*.

IV. After *l* or *r*, characteristic in the root, a palatal is



dropped before *s* or *t*; as, indulgeo, indulsi, *indulge*; spargo, sparsi, *spread*; torqueo, torsi, tortus, *twist*.

V. *V*, characteristic in the root before *t*, is changed to *u*, or dropped; or, when it unites with *s* to form *x* in the distinct modes, it becomes *c* (coördinate); as, volvo, volūtus, *roll*; moveo, motus, *move*; vivo, vixi, victus, *live*.

(b.) *Prepositions in Composition.*

I. The final vowel is sometimes dropped, or changed to another vowel, or assumes a consonant; as, ambigo (ambi-ago); anticipo (ante-capio); prodeo (pro-eo); redigo (re-ago).

II. The final consonant is more frequently assimilated, either wholly or in part; i. e., is changed (1.) to the same letter, or becomes (2.) cognate, or (3.) coördinate [see ¶ 2.]; as, (1.) appōno (ad-pono); oppēto (ob-peto); illīgo (in-ligo); (2.) impōno (in-pono); condūco (com-duco); (3.) acquiro (ad-quæro).

III. The final consonant is sometimes dropped; post and trans sometimes drop the two last; as, circueo (circum-eo); cogo (com-ago); aspergo (ad-spargo); pomœrium (post-mœrus = murus); trado (trans-do).

¶ 18. ABBREVIATED TABLE OF PREPOSITIONS IN COMPOSITION.

*Ab* = *a* > *m*, *v* : = *ab* > vowels, *d*, *f*, *h*, *j*, *l*, *n*, *r*, *s* : = *abs*, > *c*, *q*, *t* : = *as* > *p* : = *au* > *fero* and *fugio*.

*Ad* — *d* assim. > *c*, *f*, *g*, *l*, *n*, *p*, *r*, *s*, *t* : omitted > *s* with a cons., or *gn* : = *c* > *q* (coördinate).

*Circum* omits *m* sometimes > a vowel : sometimes *m* = *n* > *d*.

*Cum* (com) — *m* remains > *b*, *m*, *p* : assim. > *l*, *n*, *r* : cognate > *d*, *j* : omit > vowel or *gn*.

*Ex* remains > vowels, *c*, *h*, *p*, *q*, *s*, *t* : assim. > *f*, or = *c* : = *e* > other cons. : but *eclex*.

*In* — *n* cognate > *b*, *m*, *p*, (i. e. changed to *m*) : assim. > *l*, *r* : omit > *gn* : remains > vowels and other cons.



*Inter* — *r* assim. > *l* in *intelligo* (inter-lego).

*Ob* — *b* assim. > *c, f, g, p*: omit. > *m* in *mitto*: remains > vowels and other cons.: = *obs* in *obsolesco* (obs-oleo): = *os* in *ostendo* (os or obs-tendo).

*Per* — *r* assim. > *liceo, luceo*: dropped in *pejĕro* (per-juro).

*Pro* sometimes assumes *d* > vowel: metathesis takes place in *porriĝo* (pro-rego).

*Post* drops *st* in *pomærium, pomeridiānus*.

*Sub* — *b* assim. > *c, f, g, m, p, r*: = *s* sometimes > *c, p, t*: omitted > *s* with a cons.

*Trans* omits *s* > *s*: omits *ns* sometimes > *d, j*: remains > vowels.

*Ambi* = *amb* > vowels: remains > most cons.: = *am* > *p*: = *an* in *anceps, anfractus*.

*Dis* — *s* remains > *c, p, q, s* before a vowel, *t, h*: assim. > *f*: = *r* > *emo, habeo*: dropped > other words.

*Re* assumes *d* > vowels and the verb *do*.

NOTE. The above table reads as follows: *Ab* becomes *a* before *m* and *v*: becomes *ab* before vowels, *d, f, &c.* *Ad* — *d* is assimilated before *c, f, &c.*: is omitted before *s, &c.* *Com* — *m* remains before *b, m, &c.*: is assimilated before *l, &c.*; becomes the cognate nasal before *d* and *j, &c., &c.*

## ¶ 19. ANALYSIS OF CONJUGATION — A MODEL EXERCISE.

### 1. Definite and Indefinite Tenses.

Root.	Conn. vowel.	Tense sign.	Plur. sign.	Per. sign.	Euph. vowel.	Pass. sign.	Root.	Conn. vowel.	Tense sign.	Pass. sign.	Euph. vowel.	Per. sign.	Euph. vowel.	Plur. sign.
Am	a		n	t			Am	a	bā		i	s		
Am	ā			m	u	r	Mon	e	rē	r	i	s		
Am	a	ba	n	t	u	r	Aud	i	rē	r	e			
Mon	e	bī		m	u	r	Reg	ī				m	u	s
Mon	e	b'u	n	t	u	r	Reg	e	rē	r	i	s		
Reg	u		n	t			Am	ā		r	i	s		
Reg	i			s			Am	a	bā			m	u	s
Aud	iē	ba		t			Am	ē		r	i	s		
Aud	i	re	n	t	u	r	Am	ē				m	u	s
Am	ā	re					Aud	ie	bā			m	u	s
Mon	ē	re		m			Aud	iā				m	u	s
Aud	i	e	n	t	u	r	Mon	eā				m	u	s



2. *Complete Tenses.**The verb sum.*

<i>Recep.</i>	<i>Root.</i>	<i>Conn. word.</i>	<i>Tense sign.</i>	<i>Root.</i>	<i>Tense sign.</i>	<i>Plur. sign.</i>	<i>Per. sign.</i>	<i>Euph. word.</i>	<i>Plur. sign.</i>	<i>Paragoge.</i>
	Am	a	v	e(s)	ra	n	t			
	Am	a	v	e(s)	rā		m	u	s	
	Mon		u	i(s)						
	Mon		u	e(s)	ra		m			
	Carp	s		e(s)	ri	n	t			
De	d			e(s)	ra		t			
De	d			e(s)	rī		m	u	s	
Cu	curr			i(s)			s			
Cu	curr			i(s)	'sē		m	u	s	ti(s) (plural).
	Fec			e(s)	ri	n	t			
	Fēc			i(s)						

## ¶ 20. SYNOPSIS OF CONJUGATION.

1. *Active Voice.*

	<i>Pres.</i>	<i>Imp.</i>	<i>Fut.</i>	<i>Perf.</i>	<i>Pluperf.</i>	<i>Fut. Perf.</i>
<i>Ind.</i>	Amo	Amābam	Amābo	Amāvī	Amāveram	Amāvero
<i>Subj.</i>	Amem	Amārem		Amāverim	Amāvissem	
<i>Imper.</i>	Amā		Amāto			
<i>Infín.</i>	Amāre		Amātūrus esse	Amāvisse		
<i>Part.</i>	Amans		Amātūrus			

2. *Passive Voice.*

<i>Ind.</i>	Amor	Amābar	Amābor	Amātus sum	Amātus eram	Amātus ero
<i>Subj.</i>	Amer	Amārer		Amātus sim	Amātus essem	
<i>Imper.</i>	Amāre		Amātor			
<i>Infín.</i>	Amāri		Amātum iri	Amātus esse		
<i>Part.</i>			Amandus	Amātus		
<i>Ind.</i>	Rego	Regēbam	Regam	Rexi	Rexeram	Rexero
<i>Subj.</i>	Regam	Regērem		Rexerim	Rexissem	
<i>Imper.</i>	Rege		Regito			
<i>Infín.</i>	Regere		Regitūrus esse	Rexisse		
<i>Part.</i>	Regens		Regitūrus			
<i>Ind.</i>	Regor	Regēbar	Regar	Rectus sum	Rectus eram	Rectus ero
<i>Subj.</i>	Regar	Regērer		Rectus sim	Rectus essem	
<i>Imper.</i>	Regere		Regitor			
<i>Infín.</i>	Regi		Rectum iri	Rectus esse		
<i>Part.</i>			Regendus	Rectus		



**NOTE.** The following Table is designed to give a more condensed view of the modes than is given in the Grammar, referring the several *connectives* to distinct classes of *independent* and *subordinate* sentences.

## ¶ 21. THE LAW OF THE MODES.

### (a.) *The Indicative.*

**I.** The Indicative is used to express the *actual*, and is employed in independent sentences and their coördinates.

**REMARK 1.** Coördinate, *independent* sentences are connected by *copulative*, *disjunctive*, *adversative*, *illative*, and usually *causal* conjunctions.

**REM. 2.** The indicative is often used in subordinate sentences in the weaker forms of contingency, and when supposition is assumed as actual, and in some other idiomatic forms of expression, where, in English, we should expect a contingent mode.

### (b.) *The Subjunctive.*

**II.** The Subjunctive is used to express the *contingent*, and is employed in *subordinate* sentences.

**REMARK.** Subordinate sentences may be comprehended principally in the following classes, viz.: *final*, *conditional*, *concessive*, *relative*, and *complementary*.

#### 1. FINAL.

After all *final* and *consecutive* connectives, and relatives or relative particles performing the office of a final, the subjunctive is very uniformly used.

Connectives — *ut*, *uti*, *ne*, *quo*, *quin*, *quod*, &c., with relatives and relative particles.

#### 2. CONDITIONAL.

Conditional sentences, though allowing “a great variety of conception, and consequently of expression,” may be mostly comprehended in four classes:—

(a.) If the condition is assumed *as a fact*, the indicative is used, both in the condition and the conclusion.

(b.) If it is a supposition that *may be*, or *may become*, a fact, (implying, perhaps, a *present uncertainty*,) the subjunc-



tive of a *primary* tense is used in the condition, with the future (or present) indicative in the conclusion.

(c.) If it is a mere supposition *without regard to fact*, (implying, perhaps, a *future uncertainty*,) the subjunctive of a *primary* or *imperfect secondary* tense is used in both clauses ; — the future perfect, and even the common future, often takes the place of the subjunctive in both clauses.

(d.) If it is a supposition *contrary to fact*, the subjunctive of a *secondary* tense is used in both clauses.

Connectives — *si, sin, nisi, ni, siquidem, dummodo, &c.*

### 3. CONCESSIVES.

The concessive construction is a condition more or less strongly expressed — the concessive clause containing the condition, the adversative clause the conclusion.

For the law of the modes, see the Conditional, above. Connectives — concessive, *etsi, etiamsi, tametsi, ut, quum, quamvis, &c.* ; adversative, *tamen, attamen, veruntamen, &c.*

### 4. RELATIVE.

A sentence which is introduced by a relative, or by a similar particle of time or place, referring to that which is indefinite or general, or not yet determined, may employ the subjunctive.

REMARK. *Quicumque, quicunque, qualiscunque, &c.*, as they contain in their form the sign of contingency or indefiniteness, are usually followed by the indicative, when we might expect the subjunctive.

### 5. COMPLEMENTARY.

The complementary construction is where the subordinate sentence is the *direct object* or *complement* of a transitive verb, or the *subject* of an *impersonal verb*.

(a.) With no connective or exponent ; as, after verbs of *thinking, knowing, perceiving, &c.*, and verbs of *saying, &c.* — the *oratio obliqua* ; and when the complementary clause is the *subject* of an *impersonal verb*.

1. This construction employs the *accusative with the infinitive*.



(b.) With a connective or exponent; as, *ut, uti, ne, quod*, &c., relatives and relative particles.

2. This construction takes the *subjunctive*.

REMARK 1. To this construction should be referred the use of the subjunctive for the imperative, a verb of wishing or praying, &c., being understood.

REM. 2. So after particles of wishing.

## ¶ 22. ANALYSIS OF A LATIN SENTENCE.

Two prominent difficulties will arrest the pupil's attention in the outset, in translating a Latin sentence into English — *first*, the apparently artificial and unnatural structure of sentences in the arrangement of *subject* and *predicate* and their modifiers; *second*, in the difference between the Latin and the English, in determining the *relation* of words to each other, which in the Latin, in strong contrast with the English, is accomplished, almost entirely, by *inflection*, or *change of termination*.

These peculiarities, however, will soon be rendered familiar and easy by practice, careful observation, and the frequent translation of English into Latin.

Some assistance may be gained, perhaps, by the following remarks and Tables.

REMARK 1. In every *distinct* sentence there must be a *subject*, expressed or implied (substantive, nominative,) and a *predicate* (finite verb).

REM. 2. Both the subject and predicate may be variously modified: see §§ 202. 203; and their modifiers may still be modified, &c.

REM. 3. The modifiers of the subject may either precede or follow it; those of the predicate more frequently precede, though they often follow it.

While there is great variety in the structure of Latin sentences, occasioned by the style of different authors, by the degree of emphasis given to particular words or clauses, by a regard to euphony or idiomatic usage, &c., the following Table may be given as a very general formula of arrangement.



*Table of Construction.*

Connective	{ Modifiers of the Subject }	SUBJECT	{ Modifiers of the ; Subject }	{ Modifiers of the Predicate }	PREDICATE; or,
Connective	{ Adjective Genitive [Adjunct] }	SUBJECT	{ Appositive Adjunct ; [Adjective] }	{ Accusative Adjuncts Infinitive Adverbs, &c. }	PREDICATE { [Accusative.] [Adjuncts.] [Infinitive.] }

The following Table may assist the learner on the subject of *relations*. The *case system*, underlying the whole subject of grammatical relations, should be patiently studied, and the respective relations carefully distinguished. The terms *acts* and *acted upon* are used generically, comprehending, in the first case, all predication, in the last, the predication of all transitive verbs.

*Table of Relations.*

That which acts ;	answering the question.	<i>who, what</i> (acts) ;	Nominative.
That from which any thing proceeds as its cause, origin, &c. ;		<i>whose, of whom or what, where, of what value, &amp;c. ;</i>	Genitive.
That towards which any thing tends ;		<i>to or for whom or what ;</i>	Dative.
That which is acted upon, or direct limit ;		<i>whom or what</i> (does the action affect) ;	Accusative.
That which is ad- dressed ;		<i>who or what</i> (is ad- dressed) ;	Vocative.
That from which any thing proceeds as its point of depar- ture or cause, or with which any thing is associated.		<i>from which or what</i> (origin, source, ma- terial), <i>by whom or what</i> (means, agent), <i>with, in which or what, &amp;c.</i>	Ablative.

## ¶ 23. SYNOPSIS OF LATIN SYNTAX.

NOTE. An attempt is here made to reduce the Syntax of Latin Grammar more rigidly to distinct principles, in imitation of Crosby's Greek Grammar, adopting the same phraseology as far as the principles of the two languages are coincident. The sections refer to Andrews & Stoddard's Latin Grammar.

(A.) *General Rules.*

## 1. DIRECT RELATIONS.

- |                |   |                 |
|----------------|---|-----------------|
| 1. Subjective. | <i>That which acts.</i>                                   | THE NOMINATIVE. |
| 2. Objective.  | <i>That which is acted upon,<br/>or the direct limit.</i> | THE ACCUSATIVE. |
| 3. Residual.   | <i>That which is addressed.</i>                           | THE VOCATIVE.   |



## 2. INDIRECT RELATIONS.

1. Subjective.	<i>That from which any thing proceeds as its cause.</i>	THE GENITIVE.
	<i>That from which any thing proceeds as its point of departure or cause.</i>	THE ABLATIVE.
2. Objective.	<i>That towards which any thing tends.</i>	THE DATIVE.
3. Residual.	<i>That with which any thing is associated.</i>	THE ABLATIVE.

(B.) *Special Rules.*

- I. The SUBJECT OF A FINITE VERB is put in the Nominative.
- II. SUBSTANTIVES INDEPENDENT OF GRAMMATICAL CONSTRUCTION are put in the Nominative.
- III. The THEME OF THOUGHT OR DISCOURSE is put in the Genitive : § 213.
- IV. WORDS OF PLENTY and WANT *sometimes* govern the Genitive : §§ 213 ; 220. 2. 3.
- V. The WHOLE, OF WHICH A PART IS TAKEN, is put in the Genitive : § 212. Rem. 1—4.
- VI. ADMONITION, CRIME, and VALUE (*after verbs of valuing*) are put in the Genitive : §§ 214 ; 217 ; 218.
- VII. Words of MENTAL STATE OR ACTION govern the Genitive : §§ 213 ; 215 ; 216 ; 219 ; 220. 1.
- VIII. The TOWN *in which* (*of the first or second declension, singular*), also, *domi*, *militiæ*, *belli*, and *humi*, are put in the Genitive : § 221. 1. ; 221. Rem. 3.
- IX. An ADJUNCT DEFINING A THING OR PROPERTY is put in the Genitive : § 211.

REMARK. Instead of the *Genitive* of PROPERTY the *Ablative* is sometimes used : § 211. 6.

- X. Words of NEARNESS and LIKENESS govern the Dative : §§ 222 ; 224 ; 225. IV. Rem. 2 ; 228.



**XI.** The **INDIRECT OBJECT**, or the **OBJECT OF INFLUENCE**, is put in the **Dative**: §§ 222; 223; 223. 2. (1.); 225; 225. I. II. III.; 226—228.

**XII.** The **DIRECT OBJECT** and the **EFFECT** of an action are put in the **Accusative**: §§ 229; 232; 235. (1.), (2.), &c.

The same verb often governs **TWO ACCUSATIVES**, which may be—(1.) The **DIRECT OBJECT** and the **EFFECT in apposition**; as with verbs of *making, appointing, choosing, esteeming, reckoning*, &c.: § 230. (2.) The **DIRECT OBJECT** and the **EFFECT, not in apposition**; as with verbs of *doing, admonishing*, &c.: 218. Rem. 1; 231. Rem. 5. (a.). (3.) **TWO OBJECTS** differently related, but which are both regarded as **DIRECT**; as with verbs of *asking, demanding, teaching, and celo, to conceal*, &c.: § 231.

**XIII.** An adjunct applying a word or expression to a **PARTICULAR PART, PROPERTY, THING, or PERSON**, is put in the **Accusative**: § 234. II.

**XIV.** **EXTENT OF TIME AND SPACE** is put in the **Accusative**: § 236.

**XV.** The *Accusative* is often used **ADVERBIALLY** to express **DEGREE, MANNER, ORDER, &c.**

**XVI.** The **PERSON** and **PLACE to which** are put in the **Accusative**, (the **TOWN** and the **ACTIVE SUPINE, without a preposition**): §§ 235. (1.); 235. (2.); 337; 276. II. N. (So *domus* and *rus*: § 237. Rem. 4.)

**XVII.** The **SUBJECT** of the **INFINITIVE** is put in the **Accusative**: § 239.

**XVIII.** The **COMPELLATIVE** of a sentence is put in the **Vocative**: § 240.

**XIX.** Words of **SEPARATION** and **REMOVAL** govern the **Ablative**: §§ 241; 242; 251; 255.

**REMARK.** Instead of the *Ablative* the *Dative* is sometimes used: § 224. 2.

**XX.** Words of **DISTINCTION** (as *comparatives without quam*) govern the **Ablative**: § 256. 2.

**XXI.** The **ORIGIN, SOURCE, and MATERIAL** are put in the **Ablative**: §§ 241; 245; 246; 249.

**XXII.** Words of **PLENTY** and **WANT sometimes** govern the **Ablative**: §§ 243; 250. 2. (1.), (2.).



- XXIII. The MOTIVE and REASON are put in the Ablative: § 247.
- XXIV. The PRICE, and VALUE (after *dignor* and *dignus*) are put in the Ablative: §§ 244; 245. Rem. 1; 252.
- XXV. The TIME and PLACE *in which* are put in the Ablative, (the TOWN, *if of the third declension, or plural, without a preposition*): §§ 253; 254.
- XXVI. A PARTICIPLE AND SUBSTANTIVE are put *absolute* in the Ablative: § 257. Rem. 1—4, &c.
- XXVII. The AUTHOR and AGENT are put in the Ablative with the *passive voice*, (*the voluntary agent with a or ab*): § 248; 248. I.
- XXVIII. The MEANS and MODE are put in the Ablative: §§ 245; 245. II.; 247; 249. I. II. III.; 250; (cf. § 225. II. III.)
- XXIX. An APPOSITIVE agrees with its subject in *Case*: § 204.
- XXX. An ADJECTIVE agrees with its subject in *Gender, Number, and Case*: § 205.
- XXXI. A PRONOUN agrees with its subject in *Gender, Number, and Person*: § 206. N. 1.
- XXXII. A VERB agrees with its subject in *Number and Person*: § 209. (b.).
- XXXIII. The INFINITIVE, GERUND, and SUPINE are construed as *neuter nouns*: §§ 148. 2. 3; 273. 6. N. 9.
- XXXIV. ADVERBS modify *sentences, phrases, and words*, particularly *verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs*: § 277.
- XXXV. PREPOSITIONS connect *adjuncts*, and mark their relations.
- XXXVI. CONJUNCTIONS connect *sentences and like parts of a sentence*, and mark their relations: § 278.

*Condensed View of Agreement.*

An appositive	} agrees	{	Case.
An adjective			Gender, Number, and Case.
A pronoun			Gender, Number, and Person.
A verb			Number and Person.



# ¶ 24. SYNOPSIS OF PARSING THE SEVERAL PARTS OF SPEECH.

(a.) — is a 

Common	}	NOUN of the	<table border="0"><tr><td>1</td></tr><tr><td>2</td></tr><tr><td>3</td></tr><tr><td>4</td></tr><tr><td>5</td></tr></table>	1	2	3	4	5	}	Dec.,	<table border="0"><tr><td>Masc.</td></tr><tr><td>Fem.</td></tr><tr><td>Neut.</td></tr><tr><td>Com.</td></tr></table>	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Com.	}, from —,
1																
2																
3																
4																
5																
Masc.																
Fem.																
Neut.																
Com.																
Proper																
Abstract																
Collective																
Irregular &c.																

(decline); [derived from —,] root —, affix —; the 

Nom.	}	Sing. };
Gen.		
Dat.		
Acc.		
Voc. Abl.		

the subject of —,	}	Rule. Remarks.
direct object of —,		
adjunct of —,		
limiting —,		
governed by —,		
the Abl. absolute, &c.		

(b.) — is an ADJECTIVE [in the Com. } Deg., from — — (compare),]

1	}	(decline); [derived from —,]	root —, affix —; the
2			
3			

Nom.	}	Sing. };	Masc. };	agreeing with —,	}	Rule. Remarks.
Gen.						
&c.						
Plur.						

(c.) — is a 

personal	}	PRONOUN, of the	<table border="0"><tr><td>1</td></tr><tr><td>2</td></tr><tr><td>3</td></tr></table>	1	2	3	}	person, from —,
1								
2								
3								
demonstrative								
relative, &c.								

(decline); [derived from —,] root —, affix —; the 

Nom.	}	Sing. };
Gen.		
&c.		

{ Masc. }	}	Rule. [It refers to — as its subject antecedent ]
{ Fem. }		
{ Neut. }		

Rule, and connects — to —.]

(d.) — is a 

regular	}	VERB, of the	<table border="0"><tr><td>1</td></tr><tr><td>2</td></tr><tr><td>3</td></tr><tr><td>4</td></tr></table>	1	2	3	4	}	Conjugation,
1									
2									
3									
4									
irregular									
Transitive									
Intransitive									
Deponent									

from —, (conjugate); [derived from —,] roots — —, affix —; the



Pres.	{ <table> <tr><td>Ind.</td></tr> <tr><td>Subj.</td></tr> <tr><td>Imper.</td></tr> <tr><td>Inf.</td></tr> <tr><td>Part.</td></tr> </table>	Ind.	Subj.	Imper.	Inf.	Part.	{ <table> <tr><td>Act.</td></tr> <tr><td>Pass.</td></tr> </table>	Act.	Pass.	} ; { <i>vary</i> } ; }	(if finite), the	$\frac{1}{2}$	} Pers. Sing. } , } Pers. Plur. } ,
Ind.													
Subj.													
Imper.													
Inf.													
Part.													
Act.													
Pass.													
Imp.													
Fut.													
Perf.													
&c.													

agreeing with — ; (if Inf.), having for its subject —, and { subject of — ;  
direct object of — ; (if Part.), the  
indirect object of — ;

Nom. } Sing. { Masc. }	} agreeing with —, } Rule. Remarks.
Gen. } Plur. { Fem. }	
&c. } { Neut. }	

(e.) — is an	} Interrogative } Demonstrative } Complementary } &c. }	} ADVERB of Place } Time } Manner } Order } &c. }	} Pos. } [in the Com. } Sup. }

Deg., from —, (*compare*), [derived from —,] [compounded of —,] modifying —, Rule.  
[It refers to — as its antecedent, and connects — to —.] Remarks.

(f.) — is a PREPOSITION, [derived from —,] [compounded of —,] connecting as an

adjunct — to —, and marking the relation of	} person } to which or place } from which time } in which or place } &c. }	} Rule. Remarks.

(g.) — is a CONJUNCTION, [derived from —,] [compounded of —,] connecting — to —,

and marking the	} Copulative } Adversative } Causal } Illative } Conditional } Complementary } &c. }	} relation. Rule. Remarks.

(h.) — is an INTERJECTION, [derived from —,] [compounded of —,] expressing the  
emotion of —, and independent of grammatical construction. Remarks.

NOTES. (a.) When *declension in full* is not desired, give the Nom. and Gen. in Substantives and in Adjectives of 1 Termination, and the different forms of the Nom. in Adjectives of 2 or 3 Terminations.

(b.) In *conjugating*, give the Theme, the Inf., Fut., Perf., and Perf. Part.; to which it is well to add the Fut. Act., and Fut. Pass. Participles.

(c.) The term "*vary*" is used above in a specific sense, to denote *giving*



the different modes of a tense, or, as it is sometimes called, giving the synopsis of a tense; and the term "*inflect*," to denote giving the numbers and persons. In the Participle, declension, of course, takes the place of this.

(d.) After completing the formula above, which, to avoid confusion and consequent omission or delay, should always be given in the prescribed order, add such *remarks* as may properly be made upon the *form*, *signification*, and *use* of the word; as, in respect to the figurative or literal sense, the force or use of the number, case, degree, voice, mode, tense, &c.; citing, from the Grammar, the appropriate Rule, Remark, or Note.

(e.) Some particulars in the forms above, which do not apply to all words, are inclosed in brackets.

### ¶ 25. THE IRREGULAR VERB SUM.

This verb, so important in its use, both as an auxiliary and a substantive verb, is defective, as well as irregular, all the complete tenses and some other forms being supplied from the root of the old *fuō*. Whether the root of this verb is *e* or *es*, does not seem quite certain. We have arranged below two Tables, exhibiting both theories.

If we assume, as Prof. Crosby does in his Greek Grammar in the corresponding verb *εἶμι*, that *e* is the root, then the *s*, when used, is euphonic; if we assume, as is done on very good authority, that *es* is the root, then the disappearance of the *s* is euphonic.

Compare the tense signs of the imperfect and future indicative, and the imperfect subjunctive, with the same tenses of the regular verb. We have in the imp. indic. *ra* = *ba*; in the fut. indic. *ri* = *bi*; in the imp. subj. *se* = *re*.

#### (a.) The Verb Sum (root, e).

PRESENT INDICATIVE.								IMPERFECT INDICATIVE.								
		Root.	Euph.	Tense sign.	Plur.	Pers.	Euph.	Plur.		Root.	Euph.	Tense sign.	Plur.	Pers.	Euph.	Plur.
S.	1	(e)	su			m				e		ra		m		
	2	e				s				e		ra		s		
	3	e	s			t				e		ra		t		
P.	1	(e)	su			m	u	s		e		ra		m	u	s
	2	e	s			t	i	s		e		ra		t	i	s
	3	(e)	su		n	t				e		ra	n	t		



FUTURE INDICATIVE.								IMPERATIVE.							
		Root.	Euph.	Tense sign.	Plur.	Pers.		Root.	Euph.	Tense sign.	Plur.	Pers.	Mode vowel.	Plur.	
S.	1	e		ri		o(m)		e				s	(o)		
	2	e		ri		s		e	s			t	o		
	3	e		ri		t		e	s			t	o		
P.	1	e		ri		m	u	e	s			t	(o)	e	
	2	e		ri		t	i	e	s			t	o	te	
	3	e		ri	n	t		(e)	su		n	t	o		

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE.								IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE.							
		Root.	Euph.	Mode vowel.	Plur.	Pers.		Root.	Euph.	Tense sign.	Plur.	Pers.	Euph.	Plur.	
S.	1	(e)	s	i		m		e	s	s'e		m			
	2	(e)	s	i		s		e	s	s'e		s			
	3	(e)	s	i		t		e	s	s'e		t			
P.	1	(e)	s	i		m	u	e	s	s'e		m	u	s	
	2	(e)	s	i		t	i	e	s	s'e		t	i	s	
	3	(e)	s	i	n	t		e	s	s'e	n	t			

(b.) Verb Sum (root, es).

PRESENT INDICATIVE.								IMPERFECT INDICATIVE.							
		Root.	Euph.	Tense sign.	Plur.	Pers.		Root.	Euph.	Tense sign.	Plur.	Pers.	Euph.	Plur.	
S.	1	(e)s	u			m		e(s)		ra		m			
	2	e(s)				s		e(s)		ra		s			
	3	es				t		e(s)		ra		t			
P.	1	(e)s	u			m	u	e(s)		ra		m	u	s	
	2	es				t	i	e(s)		ra		t	i	s	
	3	(e)s	u		n	t		e(s)		ra	n	t			

FUTURE INDICATIVE.								IMPERATIVE.							
		Root.	Euph.	Tense sign.	Plur.	Pers.		Root.	Euph.	Plur.	Pers.	Mode vowel.	Plur.		
S.	1	e(s)		ri		o(m)		es				(o)			
	2	e(s)		ri		s		es			t	o			
	3	e(s)		ri		t		es			t	o			
P.	1	e(s)		ri		m	u	es			t	(o)	e		
	2	e(s)		ri		t	i	es			t	o	te		
	3	e(s)		ri	n	t		(e)s	u	n	t	o			



PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE.								IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE.							
		Root.	Euph.	Mode vowel.	Plur.	Pers.			Root.	Euph.	Tense sign.	Plur.	Pers.	Euph.	Plur.
S.	1	(e) <sup>s</sup>		i		m			es		s <sup>r</sup> e		m		
	2	(e) <sup>s</sup>		i		s			es		s <sup>r</sup> e		s		
	3	(e) <sup>s</sup>		i		t			es		s <sup>r</sup> e		t		
P.	1	(e) <sup>s</sup>		i		m	u	s	es		s <sup>r</sup> e		m	u	s
	2	(e) <sup>s</sup>		i		t	i	s	es		s <sup>r</sup> e		t	i	s
	3	(e) <sup>s</sup>		i	n	t			es		s <sup>r</sup> e	n	t		

REMARK 1. Adopting either theory of the root, many of the euphonic changes are easily accounted for; others seem to be arbitrary. For instance, supposing the root to be *es*, and the tense sign of the imper. and fut. indic. to be *ra* and *ri*, respectively, the *s* of the root would, according to familiar laws of euphony, be dropped before the *r* of the sign; while, in the imper. subj., *r* of the tense sign *re*, coming after *s* of the root, is assimilated, &c.

REM. 2. A sterner difficulty meets us in the terminations of the perfect indicative active, which it can scarcely be doubted are euphonic variations of the pres. indic. of *sum*, as those of the pluperfect, future perfect, &c., are directly those of the imper., fut., &c., of the same verb. The following analysis is suggested. The *e* of the root passes throughout, except in the third pers. plur., into *i*, (cf. the subj. pres. of this verb,) and the *s*, if adopted as a part of the root, is dropped, except in the third pers. plur., where it becomes *r*: the personal sign of the first pers. sing. is omitted (cf. the pres. and fut. of the regular verb): in the second pers. sing. and plur., we have an emphatic addition — *ti* in the sing., *tis* in the plur. (cf. in Greek a similar addition of *θα*: in English, *st.*)

We give below a tabular view of the perfect affixes, indicating the changes as they occur. The imperative sing. of the regular verb is added, in which, it will be observed, the *mode* vowel is *o*, and the plur. sign is *e* (perhaps for *s*): a second form in *tote* repeats the *t*, or personal sign.

PERFECT INDICATIVE.								IMPERATIVE ACTIVE.						
	Root.	Euph.	Plur.	Pers.	Euph.	Para- gogic.	Plur.		Conn. vowel.	Euph.	Plur.	Pers.	Mode vowel.	Plur.
S.	1.	ī(s)		(m)					a, e, i, &c.			(s)	(o)	
	2.	ī(s)		s		ti			a, e, i, &c.			t	o	
	3.	ī(s)		t					a, e, i, &c.			t	o	
P.	1.	ī(s)		m	u		s		a, e, i, &c.			t		e
	2.	ī(s)		s		ti	s		a, e, i, &c.			t	o	te
	3.	er <sup>a</sup>	u	n	t				a, e, i, &c.		n	t	o	



**NOTE.** The imperative passive can be easily made out, by adding the passive sign *r*, and observing that the first form of the second pers. sing. is the same as that of the second pers. of the indic., omitting the pers. sign.

## ¶ 26. ENGLISH ETYMOLOGIES.

English derivatives from Latin primitives are formed directly from the *root* of the original, with occasional vowel changes, and sometimes other slight modifications. The original root is sometimes adopted into our own language without addition; more frequently, however, with an English affix. These affixes frequently have a significance of their own; sometimes, however, they are only euphonic or flexional. Derivatives from nouns and adjectives offer few difficulties, and scarcely need illustration. Derivatives from verbs deserve more attention. They may be formed directly from the *theme* root, or the *root of the per. pass. part.*, or that of the *pres. act. part.*

We give below, by way of illustration, a few examples. The preposition, which may enter into the composition of the primitive or derivative, or both, we place on the left of the Table, to be applied or not, as the case may be.

### (a.) Adjectives.

Com, dis, in (en), } fortis } fort, { fort, force, comfort, discomfort, en-  
Ex, in (un), per, } (strong.) } force, effort, fortress, perforce, &c.

Ad, sub, } alter } alter, { alter, altercate, adulterate, alter-  
In, un, } (another.) } cation, subaltern, unalterable, alternate.

### (b.) Nouns.

Com, de, in, re, } forma } form, { form, formative, conform, de-  
Præ, (un)-com, (un)-re, } (form.) } form, { form, inform, perform, re-  
form, unconformable, unre-  
formed, &c.

### (c.) Verbs.

Ad, com, dis, } } mitto { mit, { admit, commit, emit, remit, sub-  
E, re, in, ob, } (send.) { miss, { mission, missive, admission,  
Per, trans, sub, } mittent, { mittent, remittent, intermittent, &c.



Ad, e (ef), de, In, præ, sub, Pro, re, post, trans,	<div> <div>facio</div> <div>(make.)</div> </div>	<div> <div>fac,</div> <div>fact,</div> <div>facient,</div> </div>	<div> <div>face, deface, surface, superficies, traffic, &amp;c.</div> <div>fact, affect, effect, defect, perfect, infect, &amp;c.</div> <div>efficient, deficient, proficient, sufficient, &amp;c.</div> </div>
Ad, e, de, ab, Com, in, inter, Pro, re, trans, se	<div> <div>duco</div> <div>(lead.)</div> </div>	<div> <div>duc,</div> <div>duct,</div> <div>ducent,</div> </div>	<div> <div>adduce, educe, deduce, conduce, traduce, &amp;c.</div> <div>deduct, abduct, conduct, product, indust, &amp;c.</div> <div>conducent, deducent, adducent.</div> </div>



# VOCABULARY.

AB

95

ADHIBEO

Ab, (a, abs, ¶ 18. § 196. I. (a.) 1.), prep. c. ab.; (denoting separation, departure *from*), *from*, also *by*, *by the side of*, *at*, *after*, (cf. ex, de.)

Ab-do, ěre, dīdi, dītus, (¶ 15. a. 3. § 163. 4. Ex. 1.), tr., *to remove*, *hide*, *conceal*.

Ab-dūco, ěre, duxi, ductus, (¶ 15. a. 1.), 3. tr., *to lead from*, *withdraw*, *take away*.

Ab-jicio, ěre, jēci, jectus, (ab-jacio, § 189. 5: ¶ 15. a. 2.), 3. tr., *to throw away*, *cast off*, *cast*, *throw down*.

Abs-tineo, ěre, tinui, tentus, (abs-teneo, §§ 189. 3: ¶ 15. a. 1.), 2. intr. & tr., *to hold off*, *abstain*, *keep back*, *decline*.

Ab-sum, esse, fui, futurus, (¶ 26.), irr. intr., *to be absent*, *to be distant*.

Ac, conj., (cf. atque, que, et, § 198. II. 1. Rem. (a.), (b.)), *and*, *and indeed*.

Ac-cēdo, ěre, essi, essus, (¶¶ 15. a. 1: 17. I.), 3. intr., *to approach*, *be added*, *come or go to*.

Ac-ceptus, p. & a., (accipio), *accepted*, *acceptable*, *pleasing*.

Ac-cīdo, ěre, Idi, —, (ad-cado, § 189. 2: § 163. 4. Ex. 1.), 3. intr., *to fall upon*, *strike*, *come to*, *fall out*: accidit, imper., *it happens*.

Ac-cipio, ěre, ēpi, eptus, (ad-capio, § 189. 5: ¶ 15. a. 2.), 3. tr., *to accept*, *receive*, *take*, *obtain*, *hear*, *understand*.

Ac-cūso, āre, āvi, ātus, (ad-causa, ¶ 15. a. 1.), 1. tr., *to accuse*, *blame*, *reprove*, *censure*.

Ac-rius, ad., (acriter, acrius, acerrime, [acer]), *more sharply*, *boldly*.

Ad, prep. c. acc., (expressing direction, or motion *to* a person or place), *to*, *unto*, *at*, *near*, *according to*, *for*, *among*, (cf. in, apud: see ¶ 18.)

Ad-dūco, ěre, xi, ctus, (¶ 15. a. 1.), 3. tr., *to lead to*, *conduct*, *induce*, *move*.

Ad-hibeo, ěre, ui, itus, (ad-habeo, §§ 189. 4: ¶ 15. a. 1.), 2. tr., *to admit*, *call in*, *associate*.



Ad-mirror, āri, ātus, dep. 1. tr., to wonder at, admire.  
 Ad-oleo, ēre, ēvi (uī), ultus (§ 15. a. 1.), 2. tr., to offer, sacrifice, burn.  
 Adolescentia, æ, f., (adolescens, § 101. 4.), youthfulness, youth.  
 Ad-olesco, ēre, ēvi, ultum, (ad-ole-sco, § 187. II. 2. (a.): § 15. a. 1.), 3. intr., to grow, grow up, increase.  
 Ad-orior, iri, ortus sum, 4. dep., to attack, assail, attempt, begin.  
 Ad-ortus, a, um, p. p., from adorior.  
 Ad-scisco, ēre, īvi, itum, (sci-sco, § 16. VI. Rem. 3.), 3. tr., to take to, receive, associate.  
 Ad-sum, esse, fui, futurus, irr. intr., § 153, to be present, be near or at hand, aid.  
 Ad-ventus, ūs, m., (ad-venio), arrival, approach.  
 Ad-versus, a, um, a., (ad-vertō), opposite, over against, unfavorable, unsuccessful.  
 Ad-versus, prep. c. ac., (ad-vertō) (motion to, or toward), against, opposite, toward.  
 Œdificium, i, n., (œdificio = œdes-facio), a building, house.  
 Œdui, ōrum, m., a people of Gaul between the Ligōris and the Arar.  
 Œduus, a, um, a., of the Œdui, an Œdum.  
 Œger, gra, grum, a., weak, infirm, sick, disheartened.  
 Œgerrīme, ad. (ægre, ægrius, ægerrīme), most difficultly, most unwilling.

Œgerrīmus, a, um, a., sup. of æger.  
 Œquus, a, um, a., level, smooth, equal, just, favorable.  
 Af-ficio, ēre, ēci, ectus, (ad-facio, § 189. 5. N. 1: § 15. a. 2.), 3. tr., to affect, influence, move.  
 Af-finitas, ātis, f., (affinis, § 101. 1.), relationship by marriage, affinity, union.  
 Ager, agri, m., a field, territory, country.  
 Ag-gredior, i, essus sum, (ad-gradior, § 189. 1.), 3. dep. tr., to go to, attack, attempt, accost.  
 Ag-gressus, a, um, p. p. from ag-gredior.  
 Agmen, inis, n., (ago), an army in motion, a troop, company, band: agmen primum, the van: agmen novissimum, the rear.  
 Ago, ēre, ēgi, actus, (§ 15. a. 2.), 3. tr., to conduct, drive, lead, do, treat, plead, speak: agēre vitam, to live: agēre se, to conduct one's self, behave: bellum agēre, to wage war.  
 Aliēnus, a, um, a., (alius), of another, foreign, unfavorable.  
 Aliquis, qua, quod or quid, (alius qui), pro., some one or thing, any, any one or thing.  
 Alius, a, ud, a., another, other, else: alius . . . alius, one . . . other or another: alii . . . alii, some . . . others.  
 Allobrōges, um, m., a people in the east of Gaul, bounded on the north and west by the Rhodānus, on the south by the Isēra.



**Alo**, ēre, ui, Itus, (§ 15. a. 1.), 3. tr., to nourish, feed, support, maintain.

**Alpes**, um, m., a chain of mountains, separating Italy from Gaul and Germany.

**Alter**, ěra, ěrum, a., one of two, the other, second: alter . . . alter, the one . . . the other.

**Altitudo**, inis, f., (altus, § 101. 3.), height, depth.

**Altus**, a, um, a., (comp. altior, sup. altissimus), high, tall, lofty, deep.

**Ambarri**, ōrum, m., a people of Gaul, east of the Arar, between the Ēdui and the Allobroges.

**Amicitia**, æ, f., (amicus, § 101. 1.), friendship, alliance.

**Amicus**, a, um, a., friendly, benevolent, allied.

**Amo**, āre, āvi, ātus, (§ 15. a. 1.), 1. tr., to love, to be fond of.

**Amplius**, ad., (comp. of ample), more, longer, further, (cf. plus, magis, ).

**Apertus**, a, um, a., (aperio), open, uncovered, exposed, naked.

**Angustiae**, arum, f., a narrow place, straits, defiles.

**Angustus**, a, um, a., strait, narrow, difficult, steep.

**Anim-ad-vertō**, ěre, ti, sus, (§ 16. vi.), 3. tr., to attend to, consider: animadvertēre in aliquem, to punish.

**Animus**, i, m., the mind, life, courage, spirit; (cf. anima, mens.)

**Annus**, i, m., a year: omnes annos, every year.

**Annuus**, a, um, a., (annus), yearly, of a year's duration, annual.

**Ante**, ad., before, previously.

**Ante**, prep. c. acc., (to the place or time before), before, previous to.

**Antea**, ad., (ante-ea), before, formerly.

**Antiquus**, a, um, a., (ante), old, ancient, (opp. to novus.)

**Aperio**, ěre, ui, ertus, (§ 15. a. 1.), 4. tr., to open, reveal, uncover.

**Ap-pello**, āre, āvi, ātus, (ad-pello, § 15. a. 1.), 1. tr., to call, address, name.

**Aprilis**, is, m., (aperio), the month April. Sometimes an adjective.

**Apud**, prep. c. ac., (to the presence of (usually) a person), to, at, near, among, (cf. ad., in.)

**Aquileia**, æ, f., a city in the territory of Venetia, in the north of Italy.

**Aquitāni**, ōrum, m., the Aquitanians, in the south-west of Gaul, bounded on the north by the Garumna, on the south by the Pyrenees.

**Aquitania**, æ, f., the country of the Aquitanians.

**Arar**, āris, m., a river of Gaul, flowing into the Rhodānus, now the Saone.

**Arbitror**, āri, ātus sum, (arbiter), 1. dep., to judge, think, to be of opinion.



- Ariovistus**, i, m., *a king of the Germans, defeated by Cæsar.*
- Arma**, ōrum, n., *arms, armor, (defensive usually); war implements for all uses.*
- At**, conj., *but.*
- Athēnæ**, ārum, *Athens, a city of Greece.*
- At-que**, (ad-que), conj., *and, and moreover*, (cf. et, ac, que. § 198. II. 1. Rem. (a.), (b.)).
- At-tingo**, ěre, ĩgi, actus, (ad-tango, §§ 189. 2: 164. 4. Ex. 1.), 3. tr., *to touch, come in contact, reach, border upon.*
- Auctoritas**, ātis, f., (auctor), *authority, power, influence.*
- Audacia**, æ, f., (audax, § 101. 1.), *boldness.*
- Audacius**, ad., (comp. of audacter (audax)), *more boldly, confidently, spiritedly.*
- Audeo**, ěre, ausus sum, (§ 142. 2.), neut. pass. or semi-dep., 2. intr. and tr., *to dare, adventure, attempt.*
- Augeo**, ěre, xi, auctus, (§ 15, a. 1.), 2. tr., *to increase, enlarge, improve.*
- Aulus**, i, m., *a Roman cognomen.*
- Aut**, conj., (alternative, usually), *or: aut . . . aut, either . . . or.*
- Autem**, conj., *but, moreover.*
- Auxilium**, i, n., (augeo), *assistance, help, auxiliary force.*
- A-verto**, ěre, ti, sus, (ab-verto; ¶ 16. VI.), 3. tr., *to turn away, avert, remove, alienate.*
- Avus**, i, m., *a father's or mother's father, grandfather.*
- Beātus**, a, (beo), *happy, fortunate.*
- Bellicōsus**, a, um, a., (bellum, § 128. I. 4.), *warlike, brave, martial.*
- Bello**, āre, āvi, ātus, (¶ 15. a. 1: bellum, § 187. I. 1. (a.)), *to carry on or wage war.*
- Bellum**, i, n., *war, battle.*
- Belgæ**, ārum, *a people of Gaul, extending from the Matrōna and the Sequāna to the Rhenus.*
- Bene**, ad., (bene, melius, optime), *well, successfully, happily.*
- Bene-ficium**, i, m., (bene-facio), *kindness, favor, benefit.*
- Bi-ennium**, i, n., (bis-annus), *two years.*
- Bituriges**, um, m., *a people of Gaul, separated from the Ædui by the Ligēris.*
- Boii**, ōrum, m., *a people of Gaul who passed over into Germany, but subsequently invaded Gaul with the Helvetii.*
- Bonus**, a, um, a., (bonus, melior, optimus), *good, fit, friendly: bonum, i, n., any good thing, a benefit: bona, ōrum, plur., goods, property.*
- C.**, *abbreviation for Caius.*
- Cado**, ěre, cecidi, casus, (¶ 15. a. 3.), 3. intr., *to fall, die, perish.*
- Cædes**, is, f., (cædo), *destruction, slaughter.*
- Cæsar**, āris, m., *a Roman general.*
- Caius**, i, m., *a Roman prænomen.*
- Calamitas**, ātis, f., *a calamity, loss, mischief.*
- Calendæ**, ārum, f., *the first day of the month, calends, (§ 326.2.(1.))*



Canto, āre, āvi, ātus, (cano, § 187.

II. 1. (a.): ¶ 15. a. 1.), 1. intr.,  
to sing.

Capio, ěre, ěpi, captus, (¶ 15. a. 2.), 3. tr., to take, seize, capture, obtain, choose, begin: capĕre initium, to begin: capere consilium, to consult, to plan.

Careo, ěre, ui, ĩtus, (¶ 15. a. 1.), 2. intr., to want, to be destitute, to be without.

Carrus, i, m., a wagon, car.

Cassiānus, a um, a. (Cassius), of Cassius: bellum Cassiānum, the war conducted by Cassius.

Cassius, i, m., a Roman consul, defeated by the Helvetii.

Castellum, i, n., (castrum, dim. § 100. 3. A. 3.), a castle, small camp, fort.

Casticus, i, m., a chief of the Sequāni.

Castrum, i, n., (§ 97.), a castle, fortress: castra, ōrum, a camp, a day's march.

Casus, ūs, m., (cado), a fall, chance, accident, misfortune, disaster.

Catamantālis, ĩdis, m., the father of Casticus.

Catilina, æ, m., a Roman patrician.

Caturiges, um, m., a Gallic tribe, dwelling among the Cottian Alps.

Causa, æ, f., a cause, reason, case: alicujus causā, for the sake of any thing, on account of.

Caveo, ěre, āvi, autus, (¶¶ 15. a. 1: 17. v.), 2. intr., to be on

one's guard, to beware, take care, avoid.

Celeriter, ad., (celer), celerius, celerrime, speedily, quickly, immediately.

Celeritas, ātis, f., (celer, § 101. 2.), speed, rapidity.

Celtæ, ārum, m., a powerful people in the west of Gaul, called by the Romans, Galli.

Centrōnes, um, m., a Gallic people among the Graian Alps.

Centum, indecl. num. a., a hundred.

Certior, ius, a., comp. of certus.

Certissimus, a, um, a., sup. of certus.

Certus, a, um, a., (certior, certissimus), certain, sure, resolved, fixed: certior fieri, to be informed.

Cibarius, a, um, a., (cibus), relating to food, fit for eating: cibaria, ōrum, n., food, provisions.

Cieo, ěre, ĩvi, ĩtus, (¶ 15. a. 1.), 2. tr., to make to go, to move, excite.

Circiter, ad., (circus), about, around: with numerals, about, nearly.

Circum, prep. c. acc. (circus) fundamental meaning, around to), around, near, about.

Citerior, ius, a., (comp. of citer, sup. citimus), nearer, hither.

Citra, ad. and prep., c. acc., on this side, within, near to.

Civitas, ātis, f., (civis, § 101. 2.), citizenship, a city, state, or province.



Clamo, āre, āvi, ātus, (¶ 15. a. 1.), 1. intr., *to exclaim, cry aloud, cry, shout.*

Cliens, entis, c., *a client, dependent, subject.*

Co-actus, a, um, p. p. from cogo.

Co-ēmo, ēre, ēmi, emptus, (¶¶ 15. a. 2: 17. III.), 3. tr., *to buy, buy up, purchase.*

Cœpi, isse, cœptus, def. tr. § 183. (2.), 1., *to begin, I began.*

Co-erceo, ēre, ui, itus, (con-arceo, ¶ 15. a. 1.), 2. tr., *to restrain, surround, check, hinder, curb.*

Co-gnosco, ēre, ōvi, itus, (com-gnosco, old form — later nosco, ¶¶ 15. a. 1.: 16. VI. Rem. 3.), 3. tr., *to know, understand, discover.*

Co-go, ere, coēgi, coactus, (com-ago, ¶ 15. a. 2.), 3. tr., *to drive together, collect, compel, force, urge.*

Col-lōco, āre, āvi, ātus, (com-lōco, ¶ 15. a. 1.), 1. tr., *to place together, locate, to give in marriage.*

Col-lōquor, i, cūtus sum, (com-lo-quor (quutus = cutus, ¶ 17. II.)), dep. 3. intr., *to speak together, converse.*

Com-būro, ēre, ussi, ustus, (com-buro = uro, ¶ 15. a. 1. (ursi = ussi, urtus = ustus, ¶ 17. III.)), 3. tr., *to burn up.*

Com-memōro, āre, āvi, ātus, (memor, ¶ 15. a. 1.), 1. tr., *to call to mind, mention, refer to.*

Com-meo, āre, āvi, ātus, (¶ 15.

a. 1.), 1. intr., *to go with, go to, resort to, come and go.*

Com-mitto, ēre, isi, issus, (¶ 15. a. 1.), 3. tr., *to bring together, commit, to err, to cause: committēre prœlium, to join battle, to contend.*

Com-monefacio, ēre, ēci, actus, (com-moneo-facio, ¶ 15. a. 2.), 3. tr., *to remind, admonish, advise.*

Com-mōror, āri, ātus sum, dep. 1. intr., *to delay, stop, pause, stay.*

Com-moveo, ēre, ōvi, ōtus, (¶¶ 15. a. 1: 17. V.), 2. tr., *to move violently, stir, excite, remove, disturb.*

Com-munio, ire, ivi, (ii), itus, (¶ 15. a. 1.), 4. tr., *to fortify, secure, defend.*

Com-mutatio, ōnis, f., (commūto), *a change, alteration.*

Com-pāro, āre, āvi, ātus, (¶ 15. a. 1.), 1. tr., *to prepare, provide, get ready, acquire.*

Com-plector, ti, xus sum, dep., 3. tr., *to encircle, embrace, surround, enclose.*

Com-plūres, a (ia), (gen. ium), a., *very many, many, several.*

Com-porto, āre, āvi, ātus, (¶ 15. a. 1.), 1. tr., *to bring together, convey, collect.*

Conātum, i, n., (conor), *an attempt, endeavor, effort.*

Conatus, ūs, m., (conor), *an attempt, endeavor, effect, undertaking.*

Con-cēdo, ēre, essi, essus, (¶ 15.



- a. 1.), 3. tr. and intr., to grant, yield, permit, depart.*  
 Con-cido, ěre, idi, isus, (con-cado, § 163. 4. Ex. 1.), 3. tr., *to cut in pieces, slay, destroy.*  
 Con-cilio, āre, āvi, ātus, (concilium), (§ 15. a. 1.), 1. tr., *to unite, gain over, reconcile, conciliate.*  
 Con-cilium, i, n., (concio), *an assembly, meeting, council.*  
 Con-cursus, ūs, m., (concurro), *a running together, meeting, engagement, collision, contest.*  
 Con-dono, āre, āvi, ātus, (donum, § 15. a. 1.), 1. tr., *to give, give up, remit, acquit, pardon.*  
 Con-dūco, ěre, xi, ctus, (§ 15. a. 1.), 3. tr., *to lead together, conduct, assemble, collect, hire, farm.*  
 Con-fĕro, ferre, contŭli, collātus, irr. tr., *to bring together, collect, gather, compare, ascribe.*  
 Con-ficio, ěre, ěci, ectus, (con-facio, § 189. 5. N. 1: § 15. a. 2.), 3. tr., *to collect, complete, finish, execute, kill.*  
 Con-firmo, āre, āvi, ātus, (§ 15. a. 1.), 1. tr., *to confirm, establish, make, ratify, secure, affirm.*  
 Con-juratio, ōnis, f., (conjūro), *a conspiracy, combination.*  
 Con-or, āri, ātus sum, dep., 1. tr., *to strive, endeavor, attempt.*  
 Con-sanguineus, a, um, (sanguis), a., *related by blood, kindred, allied.*  
 Con-scio, ěre, ivi, (§ 15. a. 1.), 4.

tr. and intr., *to know, to be conscious.*

- Con-scisco, ěre, ivi, itus, (scisco, inc. § 187. II. 2. (a.): § 15. a. 1.), 3. tr., *to determinĕ, resolve, to inflict or bring upon one's self: consciscĕre sibi mortem, to commit suicide.*  
 Con-scius, a, um, (scio), a., *conscious, witness of, guilty.*  
 Con-scribo, ěre, psi, ptus, (§ 15. a. 1.), 3. tr., *to write together, enroll, enlist, levy.*  
 Con-scriptus, a, um, p. p. from conscribo: Patres Conscripti, *Conscript Fathers.*  
 Con-sĕquor, i, secŭtus sum, (sequutus = secutus, § 17. II.), 3. dep., *to follow, pursue, overtake, obtain, acquire, complete.*  
 Con-silium, i, n., *counsel, design, plan, determination, judgment, resolve, council.*  
 Con-sisto, ěre, stŭti, stŭtus, (si-sto, §§ 16. VI. Rem. 3. N.: 15. a. 3.), 3. intr., *to stand together, to stop, halt, withstand, consist, exist.*  
 Con-sōlor, āri, ātus sum, 1. dep., *to console, comfort, solace, cheer.*  
 Con-spectus, ūs, m., (conspicio), *a sight, view, survey.*  
 Con-stituo, ěre, ui, ūtus, (constatuo, § 189. 4: § 16. VI. Rem. 2.), 3. tr., *to constitute, establish, decree, determine, appoint, place, make.*  
 Con-stitŭtus, a, um, p. p. from constituo.



Con-suesco, ěre, ěvi, ětus, (¶¶ 16. VI. Rem. 3: 15. a. 1.), 3. intr. and tr., *to be accustomed, to accustom, inure, to accustom one's self.*

Consul, ūlis, m., *a Roman magistrate.*

- Con-sultum, i, n., (consŭlo), *decree, statute, deliberation, decision.*

Con-sŭmo, ěre, psi, ptus, (¶¶ 15. a. 1: 17. III.), 3. tr., *to consume, waste, destroy.*

Con-tendo, ěre, di, tus, (16. VI.), 3. intr.; *to contend, stretch, endeavor, fight, go, proceed.*

Con-tinenter, ad., (contineo), *continually, uninterruptedly.*

Con-tineo, ěre, ui, tentus, (conteneo, § 189. 3. ¶ 15. a. 1.), 2. tr., *to hold together, contain, bound, surround, restrain.*

Con-tumelia, æ, f., *abuse, insult, reproach, injury.*

Con-venio, ire, ěni, entus, (¶ 15. a. 2.), 4 tr., *to come together, convene, assemble, meet, suit: convĕnit, it is fit, proper, &c.*

Con-ventus, ūs, m., (convenio), *a meeting, assembly, collection.*

Con-vŏco, āre, āvi, ātus, (¶ 15. a. 1.), 1. tr., *to call together, assemble, summon.*

Copia, æ, f., (com-ops), *plenty, abundance, number, provisions, goods; copiae, plu., troops, forces, § 97.*

Credo, ěre, idi, Itus, (¶ 15. a. 3.), 3 tr. and intr., *to believe, trust, credit, to think, imagine, suppose.*

Crema, āre, āvi, ātus, (¶ 15. a. 1.), 1. tr., *to burn, set on fire.*

Creo, āre, āvi, ātus, (¶ 15. a. 1.), 1. tr., *to create, produce, appoint, choose, cause.*

Cresco, ěre, ěvi, ětus, (¶¶ 16. VI. Rem. 3: 15. a. 1.), intr., *to grow, increase, thrive, become greater.*

Cultus, ūs, m., (colo), *cultivation, civilization, culture, dress, mode of living.*

Cum, prep., c. ab., (in comp. com), *with (being among, place in which), along with, among.*

Cŭm, ad., see quum.

Cupiditas, ātis, f., (cupidus, § 101. 2.), *cupidity, desire, avarice.*

Cupidus, ad., comp. of cupide, *more eagerly, or earnestly.*

Cupidus, a, um, a., (cupio), *desirous, eager, fond, ardent.*

Cupio, ěre, ivi (ii), itus, (¶ 15. a. 1.), 3. tr., *to covet, desire, wish.*

Curo, āre, āvi, ātus, (cura), (¶ 15. a. 1.), 1. tr., *to take care of, see to, provide, regard.*

Currus, ūs, m., (curro), *a chariot, wagon.*

Custodia, æ, f., (custos), *custody, guardianship, care.*

Custos, ōdis, c., *a keeper, guardian, watch, spy.*

Damno, āre, āvi, ātus, (¶ 15. a. 1.), 1. tr., *to condemn, sentence.*

De, prep., c. ab., (separation from a point of attachment), *from, down from, of, concerning, after, (cf. ab, ex.)*



- Debeo, ēre, uī, itus, (§ 15. a. 1.), 2 tr. and intr., *to owe, be in debt*: pass., *to be due, become due*: debet, imper., *it behooves, ought*.
- Decem, num. a., indecl.; *ten*.
- De-ceptus, a, um, p. p. from decipio.
- De-fendo, ěre, di, sus, (§ 16. VI.), 3. tr., *to defend, keep off, repel, protect*.
- De-jicio, ěre, ěci, ectus, (de-jacio, § 189. 5: § 15. a. 2.), 3. tr., *to throw down, overthrow, kill, slay*.
- De-libĕro, āre, āvi, ātus, (libra: § 15. a. 1.), 1. tr., *to deliberate, consult, advise, consider*.
- De-ligo, ěre, ěgi, ectus, (de-lĕgo, § 189. N. 2: § 15. a. 2.), 3. tr., *to select, choose, levy*.
- De-monstro, āre, āvi, ātus, (§ 15. a. 1.), 1. tr., *to demonstrate, show, prove, declare, name*.
- De-mum, ad., *at length, at last, in fine*.
- Depōno, ěre, osui, ositus, (deponui = deposui, §§ 16. VI. Rem. VI. N: 15. a. 1.), 3. tr., *to lay down or aside, place, lose, give up*.
- De-populor, āri, ātus sum, 1. dep., tr., *to lay waste, plunder, ravage*.
- De-precātor, ōris, m., (deprĕcor), *an intercessor*.
- De-signo, āre, āvi, ātus, (§ 15. a. 1.), 1. tr., *to mark out, describe, designate, define*.
- De-sisto, ere, stīti, stītus, (sisto = si-sto, §§ 16. VI. Rem. 3. N.: 15. a. 3.), 3. intr., *to desist, stand still, give over, leave off*.
- De-spĕro, āre, āvi, ātus, (§ 15. a. 1.), 1. tr. and intr., *to despair of, give up*.
- De-spicio, ěre, xi, ectus, (de-spe-cio, § 189. 2. § 15. a. 1.), 3. tr., *to look down upon, despise, overlook, disdain*.
- De-stituo, ěre, uī, ūtus, (de-statuo, § 189. 4. § 16. VI. Rem. 2.), 3. tr., *to leave destitute, abandon, forsake*.
- De-sum, esse, fui, futūrus, irr. intr., *to fail, to be deficient, to be wanting*.
- De-terior, ius, a., (sup. deterrī-mus, § 126.), *worse, poorer, inferior*.
- De-terreo, ěre, uī, itus, (§ 15. a. 1.), 2. tr., *to deter, frighten, hinder*.
- Deus, i, m., *God, a god, divinity*.
- Dextra, æ, f., (dexter), *the right hand, right side or wing*: ab dextrā, *on the right*.
- Dico, ěre, xi, ctus, (§ 15. a. 1.), 3. tr., *to speak, say, relate, name, call*.
- Dictio, ōnis, f., (dico), *a word, remark, speech, discourse, defence*.
- Dies, ěi, m. and f., (§ 90. 1.), *a day, time*: in dies, *daily*: diem ex die, *from day to day*.
- Dif-fĕro, ferre, distūli, dilātus, (di-fero), irr. tr. and intr., *to scatter, disperse, spread abroad, publish, differ*.



Difficile, ad., (difficilis), *with difficulty.*

Dif-ficilior, ius, comp. of difficilis; sup. difficillimus.

Dif-ficilis, e, (di-facilis), a., *difficult, hard, troublesome.*

Dignus, a, um, a., *worthy, suitable, fit, proper.*

Di-minuo, ěre, ui, ūtus, (§ 16. vi. Rem. 2.), 3. tr., *to diminish, lessen, detract.*

Di-mitto, ěre, isi, issus, (§ 15. a. 1.), 3. tr., *to send away, dismiss, discharge, let go.*

Dis-cĕdo, ěre, essi, essus, (§ 15. a. 1.), 3. intr., *to divide, separate, depart, go away.*

Disco, ěre, didici, discitŭrus, (§ 15. a. 3.), 3. tr., *to learn, know, to be acquainted with.*

Dis-PLACEO, ěre, ui, itus, (dis-pla-ceo, § 189. 4: § 15. a. 1.), 2. intr., *to displease.*

Dis-pŏno, ěre, osui, ositus, (pon-ŭi = posui, §§ 16. vi. Rem. 6. n.: 15. a. 1.), 3. tr., *to put in different places, dispose, arrange, set in order, draw up.*

Ditissĭmus, a, um, a., sup. from dis, (dis, ditior, ditissĭmus, cf. dives), *richest, most wealthy.*

Diu, ad., (diutius, diutissime), *long, by day, in the daytime.*

Diutius, ad., comp. of diu.

Diuturnior, ius, a., comp. of diuturnus, (diu), *of longer duration.*

Divĭco, ōnis, m., *a nobleman of great influence among the Helvetii.*

Di-vĭdo, ěre, isi, isus, (§ 15. a. 1.),

3. tr., *to divide, part, cut asunder.*

Divitiācus, i, m., *a nobleman of the Ādui, a friend of Caesar.*

Do, āre, dĕdi, dātus, (§ 15. a. 3.), 1. tr., *to give, grant, allow, permit, give up, yield, present, furnish: dare pŏnam, suffer punishment.*

Doleo, ěre, ui, itus, (§ 15. a. 1.), 2. intr., *to grieve, sorrow, be sorry, lament.*

Dolor, ōris, m., (doleo), *grief, pain, sorrow, distress, anger.*

Dolus, i, m., *deceit, guile, stratagem, fraud.*

Domus, ūs & i, f., (§ 89.), *a house, home, habitation, family: domi, at home.*

Dubitatio, ōnis, f., (dubĭto), *doubt, uncertainty, hesitation.*

Dubĭto, āre, āvi, ātus, (dubo, old form from duo, § 15. a. 1.), 1. intr., *to be in doubt, to doubt, to waver, hesitate.*

Dubius, a, um, a., *doubting, doubtful, uncertain: dubium, i, (subst.), doubt, uncertainty: non (haud) dubium est, there is no doubt.*

Ducenti, æ, a, num. a., *two hundred.*

Du-centum, (duo-centum), indecl. a., *two hundred.*

Duco, ěre, xi, ctus, (§ 15. a. 1.), 3. tr., *to lead, draw, conduct, build, think, consider: ducĕre uxorem, to marry.*

Dum, ad. conj., (time), *whilst, until, as long as.*

Dumnŏrix, ĭgis, m., *a nobleman*



of the *Ædui*, brother of *Divitiacus*, and an ambitious enemy of the Romans.

Duo, æ, o, num. a., *two*, § 118. 1.

Duo-dëcim, num. a., indecl., *twelve*.

Dux, ūcis, c., (duco), *a leader, guide, general, captain*.

E-dūco, ěre, xi, ctus, (§ 15. a. 1.), 3. tr., *to lead out, lead away, draw off, rear, educate*.

Ef-femīno, āre, āvi, ātus, (femīna, § 15. a. 1.), 1. tr., *to effeminate, enervate*.

Ef-fēro, erre, extŭli, elātus, irr. tr., *to bear forth or away, bear, produce, publish, raise, elate, embolden*.

Ego, mei, pron., 1st per., *I*.

E-gregius, a, um, a., (e-gregius (grex)), *excellent, distinguished, rare*.

Emo, ěre, ěmi, emptus, (§ 15. a. 2.), 3. tr., *to buy, purchase, take, get*.

E-nuncio, āre, āvi, ātus, (nuncius, § 15. a. 1.), 1. tr., *to announce, declare, report*.

Enim, conj. (causal), *for, indeed, but, truly*.

Eo, ire, ivi, itus, irr. intr., *to go, come, march, proceed*.

Eōdem, ad., (idem), *in or to the same place*.

Eques, itis, c., (equus), *a horse-man, knight: equites, Roman knights*.

Equester, tris, tre, a., (eques), *equestrian; pertaining to horse-men*.

Equitātus, ūs, m., (equus), *cav-*

*alry, horse, troops, bodies of cavalry*.

Ergo, § 94. conj. (illative), *therefore, accordingly*.

E-ripio, ěre, ui, eptus, (ex-rapio, § 189. 5: ¶ 15. a. 1.), 3. tr., *to take away, tear or pull asunder, free, liberate*.

Et, conj. (cop.), *and*: adverb, *also, even*: et . . . et, *both . . . and*: (cf. ac, atque, que.)

Etiam, ad. (emphatic), *also, truly, likewise*. conj., *and also, moreover*.

Etruria, æ, f., *a country of central Italy*.

Ex (e, ¶ 18.), prep. c. ab., (from out of), *from, out of, of, after, on account of, in accordance with*, (cf. ab, de).

Exemplum, i, n., (exīmo), *an example, copy, design, model, way*.

Ex-eo, ire, ii, itus, irr. intr., *to go out or away, shun, escape*.

Ex-ercitus, ūs, m., (ex-arceo), *an army, a disciplined army*.

Ex-istimatio, ōnis, f., (existīmo), *an opinion, belief, reputation, character*.

Ex-istimo, āre, āvi, ātus, (ex-æs-tīmo, § 189: ¶ 15. a. 1.), 1. tr., *to judge, consider, think, esteem*.

Ex-itium, i, n., (ex-eo), *destruction, mischief, ruin*.

Exītus, ūs, m., (exeo), *a going out, departure, egress, end, conclusion*.

Expeditus, ad., comp. of expedite, (expeditus), *more expedi-*



- tiously, more readily, with more rapidity.*
- Ex-plorātor, ōris, m., (exploro), *a scout, a spy.*
- Ex-pugno, āre, āvi, ātus, (§ 15. a. 1.), 1. tr., *to besiege, storm, vanquish.*
- Ex-sēquor, i, cūtus, (quūtus sum, § 17. II.), dep. tr., *to follow, pursue, avenge, prosecute.*
- Ex-specto (expecto), āre, āvi, ātus, (specto, from spicio, § 187. II. 1. (a.): § 15. a. 1.), 1. tr., *to wait for, expect, wish for.*
- Ex-stinguo, ěre, nxi, nctus, (§ 15. a. 1.), 3. tr., *to put out, extinguish, cut off, destroy.*
- Extēra, extērum, (mas. usually wanting), a, comp. exterior, sup. extrēmus or extimū; *exterior, outward, foreign.*
- Extra, prep. c. acc., (to the outside), *without, beyond, outside of: ad., beyond.*
- Extrēmus, a, um, a.; see extēra.
- Ex-ūro, ěre, ussi, ustus, (§ 15. a. 1: 17. III.), 3. tr., *to burn up, consume.*
- Facile, ad., (facilis), facilius, facillime), *easily, readily, willingly, clearly.*
- Facilis, e, a., (facio), *easy, ready, prosperous, prompt, mild.*
- Facilius, see facile and facilis.
- Facio, ěre, ěci, actus, (§ 15. a. 2), *to do, make, act, form, create: facĕre verba, to speak: facĕre finem, to finish.*
- Factu, latter supine of facio, *to be done.*
- Factum, i, n., (facio), *a deed, act, achievement.*
- Facultas, ātis, f., (facilis, § 101. 2. (2.)), *power, ability, opportunity.*
- Familia, æ, f., (famŭlus), *a household, family servants, slaves.*
- Familiāris, e, a., (familia), *relating to a household, familiar, intimate: res familiāris, private estate or property: (subst.), a friend.*
- Fatigo, āre, āvi, ātus, (fatis-ago: § 15. a. 1.), 1. tr., *to weary, fatigue, vex, harass.*
- Faveo, ěre, āvi, autus, (§ 16. VI. Rem. 2. 17. v.), 2. intr., *to favor, assist, protect.*
- Fere, ad., *almost, wellnigh, nearly.*
- Fides, ěi, f., *faith, confidence, promise, alliance: dare fidem, to pledge fidelity.*
- Filia, æ, f., (filius), *a daughter.*
- Filius, i, m., *a son.*
- Finis, is, m. & f., *end, limit, boundary, territory, country.*
- Finitimū, a, um, (finis), a., *neighboring, near: finitimi, (subst.), neighbors.*
- Fio, ěri, factus sum, irr. intr., § 180, *to become, to be made or done, happen, occur, result.*
- Firmissimū, a, um, a., sup. of firmus, *most firm, strong, powerful.*
- Flagĭto, āre, āvi, ātus, (old flago: § 187. II. 1. (a.): § 15. a. 1.), 1. tr., *to ask earnestly, demand, importune.*
- Flens, tis, pres. ac. part. from fleo, *weeping, in tears.*



Fleo, ēre, ēvi, ētus, (§ 15. a. 1.),  
 2. intr., *to weep, lament.*  
 Flumen, inis, (§ 9. iv. 4.), n.,  
*(fluo), a river, stream.*  
 Fluo, ēre, xi, xus, (§ 16. vi.  
 Rem. 5.), 3. intr., *to flow.*  
 Fortior, ius, a., comp. of fortis,  
*braver, bolder, stronger.*  
 Fortis, e, a., *brave, courageous,*  
*bold, strong, firm.*  
 Fortissimus, a, um, a., sup. of  
 fortis.  
 Fortitūdo, inis, f., (fortis, § 101.  
 3.), *fortitude, courage, resolu-*  
*tion.*  
 Fortūna, æ, f., (fors), *fortune,*  
*chance, fate: fortunæ, property.*  
 Fossa, æ, f., (fodio), *a ditch,*  
*trench.*  
 Frater, tris, m., (§ 9. iv. Rem. 3.),  
*a brother.*  
 Fraternalis, a, um, a., (frater), *fra-*  
*ternal, brotherly, friendly.*  
 Frigus, ōris, n., (§ 9. iii. (2.)),  
*cold, frost.*  
 Frumentarius, a, um, (frumen-  
 tum), *of or relating to corn: res*  
*fumentaria, corn, provisions.*  
 Frumentum, i, n., (fruges), *corn,*  
*grain, fruit.*  
 Frustra, ad., *in vain, without*  
*effect.*  
 Fuga, æ, f., *flight, exile: fugam*  
*capere, to flee.*  
 Fugitivus, a, um, a., (fugio), *fug-*  
*itive, fleeing away: fugitivus,*  
*i, m., (subst.), a fugitive, de-*  
*serter.*  
 Gabinius, i, m., *a Roman proper*  
*name.*

Gallia, æ, f., *the country of the*  
*Gauls: Gallia Ulterior or*  
*Transalpina, Gaul beyond the*  
*Rhine. Gallia Citerior or Cis-*  
*alpina, Gaul in Upper Italy.*  
 Gallus, i, m., *a Gaul: generally*  
 Galli, ōrum, m., *the Gauls*  
*generally, or, in a more re-*  
*stricted sense, the Celts.*  
 Garumna, æ, f., *now the Garonne,*  
*a river in the south-west of*  
*Gaul.*  
 Genēva, æ, f., *a town of the Al-*  
*lobroges, on Lake Lemannus*  
*(Geneva).*  
 Germāni, ōrum, *a general name,*  
*among the Romans, for the*  
*nations beyond, or on the east*  
*of the Rhine.*  
 Gero, ēre, essi, estus, (§ 15. a.  
 1. 17. iii.), 3. tr., *to bear, con-*  
*duct, wage, carry on.*  
 Gloria, æ, f., *glory, fame, re-*  
*nown.*  
 Glorior, āri, ātus sum, (gloria),  
 1. dep., *to glory, boast, vaunt.*  
 Graiocēli, ōrum, *the farthest na-*  
*tion of Hither Gaul, just on*  
*the frontiers of Transalpine*  
*Gaul.*  
 Gratia, æ, f., *favor, influence,*  
*popularity: gratiā, for the*  
*sake of: ex gratia, for exam-*  
*ple.*  
 Gravior, ius, a., comp. of gravis.  
 Gravis, e, a., *heavy, severe, dif-*  
*ficult, mature.*  
 Gravissime, ad., *see graviter.*  
 Graviter, ad., (gravius, gravissi-  
 me), *heavily, severely, strongly,*  
*grievously.*



Habeo, ēre, ui, itus, (§ 15. a. 1.),  
2. tr., *to have, possess, hold, esteem, account, think*: habēre redemptum, *to purchase or farm*.

Helvetii, ōrum, m., *a people of Gaul, whose country was bounded north by the Rhine, south by the Rhodānus and Lake Lemannus, east by a branch of the Rhaetian Alps, west by Mount Jura*.

Helvetius, a, um, a., *Helvetian*.

Hiberna, ōrum, n., *winter quarters*.

Hic, hæc, hoc, demon. pron., *this, (he, she, it)*: hic . . . ille, *this . . . that*; the former . . . the latter, (cf. ille iste, is.)

Hiēmo, āre, āvi, ātus, (hiems), § 15. a. 1.), 1. intr., *to winter, to be in winter quarters*.

Hispania, æ, f., *Spain, south and south-west of Gaul*.

Homo, inis, c., *man, whether male or female, a person*.

Honor, ōris, m., *honor, dignity, office, magistracy*.

Hortor, āri, tātus sum, 1. dep., *to exhort, encourage, urge, address*.

Hostia, æ, f., *a victim, sacrifice*.

Hostis, is, c., *an enemy, public foe*.

Humanitas, ātis, f., (humanus, § 101. 1.), *humanity, civilization, refinement*.

Humānus, a, um, a., (homo), *human, humane, civilized, kind*.

Humērus, i, m., *the shoulder*.

Ibi, ad., (is), *there, then*.

I-dem, eā-dem, i-dem, (is-dem), demon. pron., *the same*.

Idus, uum, f., *the Ides of a month*: § 326. 2. (1.).

Ignārus, a, um, a., (in-gnarus), *ignorant, inexperienced, unskilled*.

Ignāvus, a, um, a., (in-gnavus), *idle, indolent, lazy*.

Ignis, is, m., *fire*.

Ille, illa, illud, demon. pron., *that, (he, she, it)*: (cf. hic, iste, is.)

Illic, (ille), demon. ad., *in that place, there*.

Im-mortalis, e, a., (in-mortalis), *immortal, eternal, everlasting*.

Im-pedio, ire, ivi, (ii), itus, (in-pes, § 15. a. 1.), 4. tr., *to impede, obstruct, entangle, bind, harass*.

Impeditus, a, um, p. p. from impedio.

Im-pendeo, ēre, —, —, 2. intr., *to hang over, impend, threaten*.

Imperium, i, n., (impēro), *a command, order, power, empire, government*.

Im-pēro, āre, āvi, ātus, (in-pāro, § 189. 1: § 15. a. 1.), 1. tr., *to command, order*.

Im-pētro, āre, āvi, ātus, (in-pātro, § 189. 1: § 15. a. 1.), 1. tr., *to accomplish, effect, bring to pass, obtain, gain one's wishes*.

Im-porto, āre, āvi, ātus, (in-porto, § 15. a. 1.), 1. tr., *to import, bring in, introduce*.

Im-prōbus, a, um, a., *bad, wicked, dishonest, vile*.



- Improvisò, ad., (improvisus), *on a sudden, unexpectedly.*
- Im-pro-visus, a, um, a., (in-pro-video), *not foreseen, unexpected, sudden.*
- Im-pūne, ad., (impūnis), *without punishment, with impunity.*
- Im-pūnitas, ātis, f., (impūnis, §-101. 2.), *impunity, freedom from punishment.*
- In, prep. c. ac. and ab.; with the acc. — (the person or place to which), *in, into, to, unto, towards, against*: with the ab. — (the place in which), *in, among, at, by, concerning.*
- In-cendium, i, n., (incendo), *a conflagration, burning, fire.*
- In-cendo, ěre, di, sus, (in-candeo, ¶ 16. VI.), 3 tr., *to set on fire, burn, inflame, incense.*
- In-cito, āre, āvi, ātus, (¶ 15. a. 1.), 1. tr., *to urge, incite, excite, encourage.*
- In-cōlo, ere, ui, cultus, (¶ 15. a. 1.), 3. tr. and intr., *to inhabit, to live, abide, or dwell.*
- In-com-mōdum, i, n., *disadvantage, loss, defeat.*
- In-credibilis, e, a., (in-credo), *incredible, extraordinary.*
- Inde, demon. ad., (is-de), *from that place thence, then, next.*
- Indicium, i, n., (index), *a discovery, proof, information, testimony.*
- In-dūco, ěre, xi, ctus, (¶ 15. a. 1.), 3. tr., *to bring in, introduce, induce.*
- Inductus, a, um, p. p. from in-dūco.
- Industrius, a, um, a., *active, industrious.*
- Inferior, ius, a., comp. of inferus, sup. infimus or imus, *inferior, lower.*
- In-fĕro, ferre, tūli, illātus, irr. tr., *to bring or carry into, introduce, inflict: inferre bellum, to wage war: inferre signa, to attack.*
- In-fluo, ěre, xi, xus, (¶ 16. VI. Rem. 5.), 3. intr., *to flow or empty into.*
- In-fundo, ěre, fūdi, fūsus, (¶ 15. a. 2.), 3. tr., *to pour into, infuse.*
- In-fusus, a, um, p. p. from infundo, *spread or poured over, infused.*
- In-imicus, a, um, a., (in-amicus), *unfriendly, hostile.*
- In-itium, i, n., (in-ĕo), *beginning, commencement.*
- In-juria, æ, f., (injurius, § 101. 1.), *injury, wrong, injustice, harm, insult.*
- In-jussu, ab. sing. m., (in-jussus, § 94.), *without command or leave.*
- In-opinans, antis, a., *not expecting, unawares, unexpected.*
- In-qui-ro, ěre, sivi, situs, (inquæro, quæri = quæsivi; see quæso, ¶ 15. a. 1.), 3. tr., *to seek after, search for, inquire into.*
- In-sciens, entis, a., (in-scio), *not knowing, ignorant, not aware.*
- Insecūtus, a, um, p. p. from in-sēquor.
- In-sēquor, i, secūtus sum, 3. dep. tr., *to follow after, pursue, harass, persecute, press upon.*



In-sidiæ, ærum, f., (insideo),  
*snarcs, ambush, ambuscade.*

In-signis, e, a., (in-signum), re-  
*markable, distinguished, fa-*  
*mous.*

Insolenter, ad., (in-solens), un-  
*usually, haughtily, contrary to*  
*custom.*

In-solentia, æ, f., (in-solens), un-  
*usualness, strangeness, novelty.*

In-stituo, ěre, ui, ūtus, (in-statuo,  
§ 189. 4: ¶ 16. VI. Rem. 2.),  
3. tr., *to set or put in place,*  
*arrange, institute, erect, in-*  
*struct, teach.*

Institŭtum, i, n., (institutio), *a*  
*purpose, plan, mode of life,*  
*custom, institution.*

In-sto, āre, stiti, —, (¶ 15. a. 3.),  
1. intr., *to stand upon, press*  
*upon, threaten, attack.*

Intel-ligo, ěre, xi, ectus, (inter-  
lēgo, § 189. N. 2: ¶¶ 18: 15.  
a. 1.), 3. tr., *to understand,*  
*know, perceive, see.*

Inter, prep. c. acc., (in), (to go  
*to the midst), among, amid,*  
*between, during.*

Inter-cēdo, ěre, essi, essus, (¶ 15.  
a. 1.), 3. intr., *to go or come*  
*between, intervene, oppose, hin-*  
*der.*

Inter-diu, ad., (inter-dies), *dur-*  
*ing the day, by day, in the day-*  
*time.*

Inter-dum, ad., *sometimes, in the*  
*mean time, meanwhile.*

Inter-ea, (inter-is), ad., *in the*  
*mean time, meanwhile.*

Inter-ficio, ěre, ěci, ectus, (inter-  
facio, § 189. N. 1: ¶ 15. a. 2.),

3. tr., *to put between, finish,*  
*end, destroy, kill.*

Inter-im, ad., (inter-im for eum),  
*meanwhile, in the interim.*

Inter-necio, ōnis, f., (inter-neco),  
*a massacre, slaughter, carnage.*

Interpres, ětis, c., *an interpreter,*  
*mediator, negotiator.*

Inter-sum, esse, fui, futŭrus, irr.  
intr., *to be in the midst, come*  
*between, differ, be present.*

In-venio, ire, ěni, entus, (¶ 15.  
a. 2.), 4. tr., *to find, meet*  
*with, find out, discover, invent.*

Inertus, a, um, a., *unwilling, re-*  
*luctant, involuntary.*

Iipse, sa, um, inten. pron., *him-*  
*self, herself, itself: ego ipse,*  
*I myself, &c.*

Is, ea, id, demon. pron., (this,  
that, of which), *this, that, (he,*  
*she, it: (cf. ille, hic, iste.)*

Iste, a, ud, dem. pron., (is-te),  
(this, that, of yours), *this, that.*

Ita, ad., (of manner), *so, thus,*  
*even so.*

Italia, æ, f., *Italy.*

Itā-que, conj., (illative), *therefore,*  
*and so.*

Item, ad., *also, likewise.*

Iter, itinĕris, n., *journey, march,*  
*route, way.*

Itŭrus, a, um, f., a. p. from eo.

Jacto, āre, āvi, ātus, (jacio,  
§ 187. II. 1. (a): ¶ 15. a. 1.),  
1. tr., *to throw, cast, hurl, throw*  
*out.*

Jam, ad., (time), *now, already,*  
*presently.*

Jubeo, ěre, jussi, jussus, (jubsai



- = *jussi*, &c., ¶ 15. a. 1.), 2. tr., *to command, order, decree, enjoin*.  
*Judicium*, i, n., (*judex*, § 100. 5.), *judgment, trial, sentence, decision, court of justice, opinion*.  
*Judico*, āre, āvi, ātus, (*jus-dico*, ¶ 15. a. 1.), 1. tr., *to judge, give sentence, decide, determine*.  
*Jugum*, i, n., (*jungo*), *a yoke, harness, a ridge of hills, height*: *sub jugum mittere*, *to send beneath the yoke, to subdue, to humble*.  
*Jumentum*, i, n., (*jungo*), *a beast of burden, pack-horse, ox, horse*.  
*Junctus*, a, um, p. p. from *jungo*.  
*Jungo*, ěre, xi, ctus, (¶ 15. a. 1.), 3. tr., *to join, unite, connect, couple, yoke*.  
*Jupiter*, Jovis, m., (*Jovis-pater*, § 85.), *Jupiter, son of Saturn, king of gods*.  
*Jura*, æ, m., *a chain of mountains in Gaul, extending from the Rhodānus to the Rhenus*.  
*Jus*, jūris, n., *right, law, justice*.  
*Jus-jurandum*, juris-jurandi, n., (*jus-juro*, § 91.), *an oath, solemn pledge*.  
*Justitia*, æ, f., (*justus*, § 101. 1.), *justice, equity, mercy, clemency*.  
*Kalendæ*, ārum, f., see *Calendæ*.  
*L.*, abbr., *Lucius*.  
*Labiēnus*, i, m., *a Roman legate of Cæsar*.  
*Lacedæmonius*, a, um, a., *Lacedæmonian, Spartan*.  
*Lacesso*, ěre, ivi, itus, (*lacio*, § 187. II. 5: ¶ 15. a. 1.), 3. tr., *to provoke, attack, assail*.  
*Lacrýma*, æ, f., *a tear*.  
*Lacus*, ūs, m., *a lake*.  
*Largior*, iri, itus sum, (*largus*), 4. dep., *to give abundantly, bestow gifts, lavish*.  
*Largiter*, ad., (*largus*), *largely, plentifully, much*.  
*Largitio*, ōnis, f., (*largior*, § 102. 7.), *liberality, bribery, extravagance*.  
*Late*, ad., (*latus*), *widely, extensively*.  
*Lateo*, ere, ui, —, (¶ 15. a. 1.), 2. intr., *to be concealed, lie hid, to lurk*.  
*Latissimus*, a, um, a., (*latus*, *latior*, *latissimus*), *broadest, widest, most extensive*.  
*Latitúdo*, inis, f., (*latus*, § 101. 3.), *breadth, width, extent*.  
*Latobrōgi*, ōrum, m., *a Gallic tribe near the Helvetii, with whom they united in the invasion of Gaul*.  
*Latus*, ěris, n., (¶ 9. IV. (2.)), *the side, flank, wing*.  
*Legatio*, ōnis, f., (*lēgo*, § 102. 7.), *an embassy, deputation, legation*.  
*Egātus*, i, m., (*lēgo*), *an ambassador, legate, lieutenant, deputy*.  
*Legio*, ōnis, f., (*lēgo*), *a legion, body of foot soldiers*: for a Roman legion, see *Rom. Antiquities*.  
*Lemannus* (*Lacus*), i, m., *the*



*Lake Geneva, between the Helvetii and the Allobroges.*  
 Lentitas, ātis, f., (lenis, § 101. 1.), *gentleness, smoothness, slowness.*  
 Lex, lēgis, f., (lēgo, ěre), *a law, statute, decree.*  
 Liberalitas, ātis, (liberālis, § 101. 1.), *generosity, liberality.*  
 Libĕri, ōrum, m., (liber), *children* (in opposition to the domestics, the servi).  
 Liberius, ad., (libĕre, liberius, liberrīme, (liber) ), *more freely, more boldly.*  
 Libero, āre, āvi, ātus, (liber, ¶ 15. a. 1.), 1. tr., *to set at liberty, to free.*  
 Libertas, ātis, f., (liber, § 101. 2. (2.)), *liberty, freedom, permission.*  
 Liceor, ěri, licītus sum, 2. dep. intr., *to bid at auction, offer a price for.*  
 Licet, licuit, licītum est, imper., (§ 184.), *it is lawful, right, permitted, one can.*  
 Lingōnes, um, m., *a people of Celtic Gaul, north of the Ēdui.*  
 Lingua, æ, f., *the tongue, speech, language.*  
 Linter, tris, f., (¶ 9. iv. Rem. 3.), *a bark, boat.*  
 Liscus, i, m., *chief magistrate or Vergobrētus of the Ēdui.*  
 Litĕra, æ, f., *a letter of the alphabet: literæ, ārum, a letter or letters, writings, documents, literature.*  
 Locus, i, m., (loci, m., loca, n., ōrum, § 92. 2.), *a place, region, condition, state.*

Longè, ad., (longus), *far, much, very much, (longius, longissīme).*  
 Longissīme, ad., see longe.  
 Longitūdo, inis, f., (longus, § 101. 3.), *length, longitude.*  
 Longius, a. or ad., see longe.  
 Loquor, i, locūtus, 3. dep. tr. and intr., (loquutus = locutus, ¶ 17. II.), *to speak, converse, say, tell, declare.*  
 Lucius, i, m., *a Roman prænomen.*  
 M., abbr. *for Marcus.*  
 Magis, ad., (comp. magis, sup. maxīme), *more, rather, in a higher degree.*  
 Magistrātus, ūs, m., (magister), *magistracy, civil authority, magistrate.*  
 Magnopĕre, ad., (magnus-opus), *very much, exceedingly.*  
 Magnus, a, um, a., (major, maximus), *great, large, much, powerful.*  
 Majōres, um, m., (magnus), *ancestors, fathers.*  
 Malefĭcium, i, m., (malefĭcus), *offence, harm, crime.*  
 Mando, āre, āvi, ātus, (manus-do, ¶ 15. a. 1.), tr., *to commission, order, command, commit.*  
 Marcus, i, m., *a Roman prænomen, Marcus.*  
 Marcus, i, m., *a Roman prænomen, Marcus.*  
 Matĕra, æ, f., *a javelin, spear.*  
 Mater, tris, f., (¶ 9. iv. Rem. 3.), *a mother.*  
 Matrimonium, (mater, § 100. 6.), *marriage, matrimony.*



**Matrōna**, æ, m., *a river in central Gaul, now the Marne.*

**Matūro**, āre, āvi, ātus, (maturus, ¶ 15. a. 1.), tr. and intr., *to ripen, to become ripe, mature, hasten.*

**Matūrus**, a, um, a., *ripe, mature, early, seasonable.*

**Maxīme**, ad., (magis, maxīme (magnus), § 194. 4.), *most, especially, very great.*

**Maxīmus**, a, um, a., sup. of magnus.

**Memoria**, æ, f., (memor, § 101. 1), *memory, recollection, report, story: memoriā tenēre, to remember.*

**Mens**, tis, f., *the mind, intellect, thought, heart*, (cf. anima, animus).

**Mensis**, is, m., *a month.*

**Mercātor**, ōris, m., (mercor, § 102. 6.), *a merchant, trader.*

**Mercor**, āri, ātus sum, (merx), 1. dep., *to trade, traffic, buy, sell.*

**Mereo**, ēre, ui, itus, (¶ 15. a. 1.), 2. tr., *to deserve, merit, earn, gain: mereor, ēri, dep. sometimes.*

**Merito**, ad., (mereo), *deservedly, justly, according to merit.*

**Meritum**, i, n., (mereo), *merit, desert.*

**Merx**, cis, f., *goods, merchandise.*

**Messāla**, æ, m., *a Roman surname.*

**Metior**, iri, mensus sum, 4. dep. tr., *to measure, deal out, distribute.*

**Miles**, itis, c., *a soldier, warrior.*

**Militia**, æ, f., (militāris, § 101. 1.), *military service, warfare, campaign.*

**Mille**, a., indecl., *a thousand.*

**Mille**, n., indecl. (in sing.), plur. millia, ium, (followed by the gen. plur., § 118. 6. (a.)), *a thousand.*

**Minīme**, ad., (parum, minus, minīme, (parvus)), *least of all, very little, by no means.*

**Minīmus**, a, um, a., (parvus, minor, minīmus), *least, very small, smallest: minīmus natu, youngest.*

**Minor**, us, a., comp. of parvus, *smaller, less, inferior.*

**Minuo**, ěre, ui, ūtus, (minor, ¶ 16. VI. Rem. 2.), 3. tr., *to lessen, diminish.*

**Minus**, n., a. or ad., see minor.

**Mitto**, ěre, isi, issus, (¶ 15. a. 1.), 3. tr., *to send, hurl, throw, dismiss, throw away, produce.*

**Modus**, i, m., *manner, method, mode, bound, limit: modò, ad., only, just now, lately.*

**Molitus**, a, um, a., (molo), *ground.*

**Moneo**, ěre, ui, itus, (mens, ¶ 15. a. 1), 2. tr., *to admonish, remind, advise.*

**Mons**, tis, m., *a mountain.*

**Morior**, i, (rarely iri), mortuus sum, 3. and 4. dep. intr., *to die.*

**Mors**, tis, f., (morior), *death.*

**Mos**, ōris, m., *manner, custom, usage.*

**Moveo**, ěre, ōvi, ōtus, (¶¶ 16. VI. Rem. 2: 17. v.), 2. tr., *to move, remove.*

**Multitūdo**, inis, f., (multus, § 101. 3.), *a multitude, great number.*



Multò or multum, ad., (multus),  
*much, greatly, often.*

Multus, a, um, a., (sup. plurimus),  
*many, numerous, much, fre-*  
*quent: multò c. comp., by*  
*much, by far.*

Munitio, ònis, f., (munio, § 102.  
7.), *a fortification, defence,*  
*rampart, bulwark.*

Murus, i, m., *a wall.*

Muto, ãre, ãvi, ãtus, (movito,  
¶ 15. a. 1.), 1. tr., *to alter,*  
*change.*

Nameius, i, m., *a nobleman of*  
*the Helvetii.*

Natūra, æ, f., (nascor, § 102. 7.  
Rem. 2.), *nature, constitution,*  
*disposition, character.*

Navis, is, f., *a ship, large boat.*

Ne, ad. and conj., *not, lest: ne-*  
*quidem, not even: ne, (enclitic,*  
*an interrogative sign without*  
*translation, usually.)*

Necessariò, ad., (necessarius), *ne-*  
*cessarily.*

Necessarius, a, um, a., *necessary,*  
*needful, friendly: subst., a*  
*friend, client, relation.*

Nego, ãre, ãvi, ãtus, (ne-aio: ¶ 15.  
a. 1.), 1. tr. and intr., *to say*  
*no, deny, refuse.*

Nemo, inis, c., (ne-homo), *no*  
*man, no one, none.*

Neque or nec, conj., (ne-que),  
*and not: neque . . . neque,*  
*or nec . . . nec, neither . . .*  
*nor.*

Nervus, i, m., *a sinew, tendon,*  
*force, vigor, strength.*

Nex, nēcis, f., *death, violent death.*

Nihil, n., indecl., *nothing, nought,*  
*not at all.*

Nihilum, i, n., *nothing.*

Nitor, i, isus and ixus sum, 3.  
dep. intr., *to strive, attempt,*  
*endeavor.*

Nix, nivis, f., *snow.*

Nobilissimus, a, um, a., (sup. of  
nobilis, nobilior, nobilissimus),  
*most noble, illustrious.*

Nobilitas, ãtis, f., (nobilis, § 101.  
1.), *nobility, high birth or rank.*

Noctu, ab. sing., § 94, *in the night,*  
*by night.*

Nolo, nolle, nolui, (non-volo,  
§ 178. 2.), irr. tr., *to be unwill-*  
*ing, not to wish.*

Nomen, inis, n., (nosco), *a name,*  
*appellation, family.*

Non, ad., *not, no: non modò,*  
*not only.*

Non-dum, ad., *not yet, not as yet.*

Non-nullus, a, um, a., (non-ne-  
nullus), *some, several.*

Non-nunquam, ad., (non-ne-un-  
quam), *sometimes.*

Noreia, æ, f., *a city of Noricum,*  
*the capital of the Taurisci.*

Noricus, a, um, a., *of Noricum,*  
*Norican.*

Noster, tra, trum, poss. pron.,  
(nos), *our, our own, ours:*  
*nostri, our men, our friends or*  
*soldiers.*

Novem, num. ad., indecl., *nine.*

Novissimus, a, um, a., (sup. of  
novus, novior, novissimus),  
*newest, latest, last: novissimum*  
*agmen, the rear.*

Novus, a, um, a., *new, late, fresh,*  
*uncommon, unusual.*



Nubo, ěre, psi, ptus, (§§ 15. a. 1: 17. 1.), 3. intr., *to cover, veil, marry.*

Nullus, a, um, (ne-ullus), *not any, none, no.*

Num, ad., (interrogative where a negative answer is expected), *whether*, (not often translated into English.)

Numĕrus, i, m., *a number, quantity.*

Nuncio, āre, āvi, ātus, (nuncius, § 187. I. 1. (a.): §§ 15. a. 1.), 1. tr., *to announce, report, inform.*

Nuncius, i, m., (novum-cio), *a reporter, messenger, news, tidings.*

Nunquam, ad., (ne-unquam), *never, at no time.*

Nuntio, see nuncio.

Nuper, ad., (novus), *lately, recently.*

Ob, prep. c. acc., (denotes direction towards or to something), *towards, to, at, on account of, for.*

Ob-ārātus, a, um, a., (ob-æs), *in debt, a debtor.*

Obliviscor, i, litus sum, (§§ 16. vi. Rem. 3), 3. dep., (c. gen. of a person, and c. the gen. or acc. of a thing), *to forget.*

Ob-sĕcro, āre, āvi, ātus, (ob-sacro, § 189. 1: §§ 15. a. 1.), 1. tr., *to entreat, beseech, implore.*

Ob-ses, Idis, c., (ob-sedeo), *a hostage, a pledge.*

Obstrictus, a, um, p. p. from ob-stringo.

Ob-stringo, ěre, inxi, ictus, (§§ 15.

a. 1: 16. vi. Rem. 3.), 3. tr., *to bind about, fetter, hinder, to lay under obligation.*

Ob-tineo, ěre, ui, entus, (ob-te-neo, § 189. 3: §§ 15. a. 1.), 2. tr., *to obtain, hold, have, possess, retain, accomplish.*

Oc-cāsus, ūs, m., (ob-cado), *a going down, the west, downfall.*

Oc-cido, ěre, idi, isus, (ob-cædo, § 163. 4. Ex. 1.), 3. tr., *to cut down, kill, destroy.*

Oc-cido, ere, idi, cāsus, (ob-cado, § 163. 4. Ex. 1.), 3. intr., *to fall down, perish, die, fall.*

Oc-cŭpo, āre, āvi, ātus, (ob-capio, §§ 15. a. 1.), 1. tr., *to occupy, take possession of, seize, employ.*

Ocĕānus, i, m., *the ocean.*

Ocĕlum, i, n., *a city in the Cottian Alps.*

Octoginta, num. a., (octo), *eighty.*

Ocŭlus, i, m., *the eye, sight.*

Odi, odisse, osus sum, § 183, (2.), 1., *to hate, to dislike.*

Of-fendo, ěre, ndi, sus, (ob-fendo, §§ 16. vi.), 3. tr., *to strike against, offend, take offence, err, do amiss.*

Of-fensio, ōnis, f., (offendo, § 102. 7.), *offence, harm, hurt, stumbling.*

Omnino, ad., (omnis), *altogether, wholly, entirely, only.*

Omnis, e, a., *all, every, the whole, of every kind.*

Oportet, ěre, uit, 2. impers., § 184., intr., *it is necessary, needful, proper, becoming, it ought.*

Oppidum, i, n., (ops-do), *a town, fortified town, city.*



Op-pugno, āre, āvi, ātus, (ob-pugno, ¶ 15. a. 1.), 1. tr., to fight against, attack, assault, besiege.

Ops, opis, f., (94), power, strength, resources, wealth, assistance.

Opus, ēris, n., (¶ 9. III. Rem. 1. (2.)), work, labor: a military work, fortification.

Oratio, ōnis, f., (oro), a speaking, speech, address, harangue.

Orgetōrix, Igis, a nobleman of the Helvetians, and a distinguished leader in their revolt.

Oriens, entis, pres. part. from orior.

Orior, iri, ortus, 4. dep., to arise, appear, be visible.

Ostendo, ěre, endi, sus and tus, (obs-tendo, ¶ 16. VI.), to exhibit, show, display, disclose.

P., abbr., Publius.

Pabulatio, ōnis, f., (pabŭlor, § 102. 7.), pasture, a foraging, feeding, pasturing.

Pabŭlum, i, n., (pasco, § 102. 5. (a.)), food, pasture, grass, grain, forage.

Paco, āre, āvi, ātus, (pax, § 187. I.: ¶ 15. a. 1.), 1. tr., to pacify, bring to a state of peace, subdue, conquer.

Pæne, ad., (pene), almost, nearly, well nigh.

Pagus, i, m., a district, village, town, province, tribe.

Paratior, ius, a., (paro), comp. of parātus, more prepared, ready.

Paro, āre, āvi, ātus, (pario, ¶ 15.

a. 1.), 1. tr., to prepare, get ready, provide, furnish, procure.

Pars, tis, f., a part, piece, portion, share, party.

Parvus, a, um, a., (comp. minor, sup. minimus), small, little, insignificant.

Passus, ūs, m., (pando), a step, pace, a measure of five Roman feet: mille passuum, a mile.

Patens, tis, pres. part. and a., (pateo), open, unobstructed, accessible.

Pateo, ěre, ui, —, (¶ 15. a. 1.), 2. intr., to be open, stand or lie open, to be accessible, exposed, clear, to extend.

Pater, tris, m., ¶ 9. IV. Rem. 3, a father, sire.

Patior, i, passus sum, 3. dep. tr., to bear, support, suffer, allow.

Pauci, æ, a, a., a few, few.

Paulātim, ad., (paulus), by little and little, by degrees, gradually.

Pax, ācis, f., peace, quiet.

Pello, ěre, pepŭli, pulsus, (¶ 15. a. 3.), 3. tr., to beat, drive away, expel, rout.

Per, prep. c. acc., (through to), through, through the midst of, during, by, by reason of, on account of.

Per-dūco, ěre, xi, tus, (¶ 15. a. 1.), 3. tr., to lead through, lead, bring, conduct, convey, draw out.

Per-facile, ad., (facilis), very easily or readily.

Perfacilis, e, a., (per-facilis), very easy.

Perfectus, a, um, p. p. from perficio, finished, completed.



- Per-fēro, erre, tūli, lātus, irr., §179.  
tr., to bear through, bear, support, suffer, announce, report.
- Perfacio, ēre, ēci, ectus, (per-facio, § 189. N. 1: ¶ 15. a. 2.), 3. tr., to finish, to perfect, accomplish, cause.
- Perfuga, æ, f., (perfugio), a deserter.
- Pericūlum, i, n., danger, risk, trial, hazard.
- Per-moveo, ēre, ōvi, ōtus, (¶¶ 16. VI. Rem. 2: 17. v.), 2. tr., to move deeply, stir up, excite, induce, persuade.
- Per-multus, a, um, a., very many, numerous.
- Pernicies, ēi, f., (per-neco), destruction, ruin, disaster.
- Per-pauci, æ, a, a., very few, a very few.
- Per-rumpo, ēre, ūpi, uptus, (¶¶ 16. VI. Rem. 3: 15. a. 2.), 3. tr., to break through, break to pieces, burst through or into.
- Per-sēquor, i, secūtus sum, (¶ 17. II.), 3. dep. tr., to follow after, pursue, press upon, persecute, avenge, perform.
- Per-sevēro, āre, āvi, ātus, (¶ 15. a. 1.), 1. intr., to persevere, persist.
- Persolvo, ēre, solvi, solūtus, (¶¶ 16. VI. Rem. 2: 17. v.), 3. tr., to release or discharge, pay, unravel, explain: persolvēre pœnam, to suffer punishment.
- Per-suadeo, ēre, si, sus, (¶ 15. a. 1.), 2. intr., (usually c. dat.), to persuade, advise, induce, prevail upon.
- Per-terreo, ēre, ui, itus, (¶ 15. a. 1.), 2. intr., to frighten greatly, terrify, alarm.
- Per-timeo, ēre, ui, —, (¶ 15. a. 1.), 2. intr., to fear greatly, to be very timid.
- Per-timesco, ēre, imui, —, (per-timeo, § 187. II. 2. (a.): ¶ 15. a. 1.), 3. intr., to become very much frightened, to fear greatly.
- Pe-tineo, ēre, ui, (per-teneo, § 189. 3: ¶ 15. a. 1.), 2. intr., to stretch out, reach or extend to, to belong or pertain to.
- Per-turbo, āre, āvi, ātus, (¶ 15. a. 1.), 1. tr., to disturb greatly, confuse, trouble.
- Per-venio, ire, ēni, entus, (¶ 15. a. 2.), 4. intr., to go or come to, arrive at, reach, come, go.
- Pes, ēdis, m., the foot, a foot in measure: pedem referre, to retreat.
- Pestis, is, f., a plague, pest, scourge.
- Peto, ēre, ivi (ii), itus, (¶ 15. a. 1.), 3. tr., to seek, request, desire, fall upon, attack, to go.
- Piso, ōnis, m., Lucius Piso, Cæsar's father-in-law.
- Placeo, ēre, ui, itus, (¶ 15. a. 1.), 2. intr., to please, satisfy, to be agreeable.
- Plebs, ēbis, and plebes, is, f., the common people, plebeians.
- Plurimus, um, a., sup. of multus, which see.
- Plus, ūris, a., neut., comp. of multum, more, very much.
- Pœna, æ, f., satisfaction, expiation, punishment.



- Polliceor, ēri, itus sum, 2. dep. tr., *to offer, promise.*
- Pono, ěre, osui, ositus, (pon-  
ui = posui, ¶¶ 16. VI. Rem. 6. N.: 15. a. 1.), 3. tr., *to put, place, lay, build, lay down, assert.*
- Pons, ntis, m., *a bridge.*
- Populatio, ōnis, f., (popŭlor, § 102. 7.), *a ravaging, plundering, pillaging.*
- Popŭlor, āri, ātus sum, 1. dep. tr., *to lay waste, devastate, ravage, plunder.*
- Popŭlus, i, m., *a people, state, nation, multitude.*
- Porto, āre, āvi, ātus, (¶ 15. a. 1.), 1. tr., *to bear, carry, transport.*
- Portorium, i, n., (porto), *a tax, duty, impost, custom.*
- Possessio, ōnis, f., (possideo), *a possession, estate, property.*
- Possum, posse, potui, (potis-sum, § 154. Rem. 7. (a.)), irr. intr., *to be able, have power or influence: as an auxiliary, may, can, might, could, &c.*
- Post, prep. c. acc., (coming or going after, till the person or thing is reached, i. e. *going after to*), *after, next, behind, since, below.*
- Post, ad., *afterwards, after, behind.*
- Postĕrus, a, um, a., comp. postĕrior, sup. postĕrmus, *next, following, ensuing: postĕri, ōrum, posterity.*
- Potentia, æ, f., (potens, § 101. 1.), *power, might, faculty, dominion.*
- Potentissimus, a, um, a., sup. of potens, *most able, powerful, strong.*
- Potestas, ātis, f., (potis, § 101. 2. (1.), (2.)), *power, ability, dominion, opportunity, liberty.*
- Potior, iri, itus sum, (potis), 4. dep. (c. ab.), *to become master of, obtain, acquire, gain.*
- Præ-cĕdo, ěre, essi, essus, (¶¶ 15. a. 1: 17. L.), 3. intr. and tr., *to go before, precede, excel, surpass.*
- Præ-ceptum, i, n., (præcipio), *precept, advice, counsel, rule.*
- Præ-cipio, ěre, ěpi, eptus, (præcapiō, § 189. 5: ¶ 15. a. 2.), 3. tr., *to take or seize before-hand, anticipate, instruct, advise, teach.*
- Præ-ficio, ěre, ěci, ectus, (præfacio, § 189. N. 1: ¶ 15. a. 2.), 3. tr., *to place or set over, appoint, preside over.*
- Præ-mitto, ěre, isi, issus, (¶ 15. a. 1.), 3. tr., *to send before, send out.*
- Præ-pono, ěre, osui, ositus, (¶ 16. VI. Rem. 6. N.), 3. tr., *to put or set before, place first, prefer, set over, appoint.*
- Præsens, tis, a., *present, in person, at hand, prompt.*
- Præsētia, æ, f., (§ 101. 1), *presence: in præsentiā, for the present, at present.*
- Præsertim, ad., (præ-sero), *especially, chiefly.*
- Præ-sidium, i, n., (præsēs, § 100. 5.), *a garrison, guard, defence, escort, help.*



Præ-sto, āre, Iti, Itus, (§ 163. 4.

Ex. 1.), 1. intr. and tr., *to stand before, be superior to, excel, surpass, show, pay, grant, cause.*

Præ-sum, esse, fui, futūrus, irr. intr., *to be before, be set over, preside or rule over.*

Præter, prep. c. acc., (præ), (motion by or past, i. e. *to and past*), *past by, along, except, beyond.*

Præter-eo, ire, ii, Itus, irr. intr., *to go or pass by, omit, leave out.*

Præteritus, a, um, p. p. from prætereo, *gone by, past.*

Prendo or pre-hendo, ěre, di, sus, (§ 16. vi.), 3. tr., *to seize, take, lay hold of.*

Pretium, i, n., *price, value, worth, reward, merit.*

Prex, ěcis, f., (§ 94.), *a prayer, request. preces, a prayer, curse, imprecation.*

Primus, a, um, a., (pris, (obsolete)), sup of prior, *first, foremost, chief, in front, in the van.*

Princeps, ĩpis, a., (primus-capio), *the first, chief, most eminent or noble, leader, ruler.*

Principātus, ūs, m., (princeps), *the first place, preëminence, highest rank, sovereignty, rule.*

Principium, i, n., (princeps), *a beginning, commencement.*

Pristinus, a, um, a., *former, early, pristine, ancient.*

Prius-quam, ad. and conj., *before that.*

Privātus, a, um, a. and part.,

(privo), *a private person, private, individual.*

Pro, prep. c. ab., (situation before, i. e. *place in or at which*), *before, in front of, opposite to, in, according to, on account of, by reason of.*

Probo, āre, āvi, ātus, (probus, § 187. I. 1. (a.): ¶ 15. a. 1.), 1. tr., *to try, test, prove, show, demonstrate, approve.*

Procella, æ, f., (procello), *storm, wind, tempest.*

Pro-do, ěre, didi, Itus, (§ 163. 4. Ex. 1.), 3. tr., *to give forth, relate, hand down, betray.*

Pruelium, i, n., (pro- or præ-ire), *battle, engagement, skirmish, (cf. pugna, acies).*

Pro-fectio, ōnis, f., (proficiscor), *a going away, departure, march.*

Profectus, a, um, p. p. from proficiscor.

Pro-ficiscor, i, ectus sum, (pro-facio), 3. dep. intr., *to set out, travel, march, depart, go.*

Pro-hibeo, ěre, ui, Itus, (pro-habeo, § 189. 4: ¶ 15. a. 1.), 2. tr., *to hold back, prevent, prohibit, stop, restrain, defend.*

Prope, ad., (propis (obsolete), propior, proxĭmus), comp. propius, sup. proxĭme, *near, near to, almost.*

Prope, prep. c. acc., (to go near to), *near, near to.*

Pro-pello, ěre, pŭli, pulsus, (§ 163. 4. Ex. 1.), 3. tr., *to drive before or forth, repel, drive out, repulse, ward off.*

Propinquus, a, um, (prope), *near,*



- neighboring*: a subst., a kinsman, relation.
- Propior, ius, a., (propis (obsolete), sup. proximus), *nearer, closer, more intimate.*
- Pro-pōno, ěre, osui, ositus, (¶¶ 16. VI. Rem. 6. N.: 15. a. 1.), 3. tr., *to set forth, propose, show, declare, offer, report, appoint.*
- Propter, prep. c. acc. and ad., (contracted from propiter (prope)), *near, near to, for, on account of.*
- Propterea, ad., (propter-is), *therefore, on that account*: propterea quòd, *because.*
- Provincia, æ, f., (pro-vinco), *a province*: provincia nostra, *our province*, i. e. *the Roman province.*
- Proximus, a, um, a., sup. of propior, *next, nearest.*
- Publicè, ad., (publicus), *publicly, in behalf of the state, on public authority.*
- Publicus, a, um, a., (populus), *of or belonging to the state, common, public*: publicus, i, m., *a magistrate, public officer.*
- Puer, ěri, m., (sometimes f.), *a boy.*
- Puto, āre, āvi, ātus, (¶ 15. a. 1.), 1. tr., *to reckon, esteem, think.*
- Pyrenæus, a, um, a., *Pyrenean.*
- Pyrenæi montes, *Pyrenean mountains, the Pyrenees, between Gallia and Hispania.*
- Q., abbr. for *Quintus.*
- Quadraginta, num. a., indecl., *forty.*
- Quadringenti, æ, a, num. a., (quatuor-centum), *four hundred.*
- Quæro, ěre, sivi, situs, (quæriv = quæsiv: (see quæso): ¶ 15. a. 1.), 3. tr., *to seek, look for, ask, inquire, investigate.*
- Quàm, ad. and conj., (qui), *in what manner, how, how much, as much as*: in comparisons, *as, than*: tam . . . quàm, *as much . . . as*: with the superlative, see § 127. 4.
- Quantus, a, um, a., (quam), *how great, how many, how much, as great as*: tantus . . . quantus, *so great or many . . . as, or as great or many . . . as.*
- Qua-re, ad. and conj., (quæ-res), *by which means, on which account, why, wherefore.*
- Quartus, a, um, (quatuor), a., *the fourth, fourth part.*
- Quatuor, num. a., indecl., *four.*
- Que, conj., (copulative), (enclitic, § 198. N. 1.), *and*: que . . . que, *both . . . and*, (cf. ac, atque, et).
- Queror, i, questus sum, 3. dep. intr. and tr., *to complain, lament, bewail.*
- Questum, *former supine, from queror, to complain.*
- Questus, tis, m., (queror), *a complaint, accusation.*
- Qui, quæ, quod, rel. pron., *who, which, what*: also interrog., *who? which? what?* its correlative is *is.*
- Quic-quam, see quisquam.
- Qui-dam, quæ-dam, quod-or quid-



dam, indef. pron., *a certain one, somebody, something.*  
 Quidem, ad., *indeed, truly, at least*: ne quidem, *not even.*  
 Quin, conj., (qui-ne), *that not, but that, but, yet, indeed.*  
 Quindēcim, num. a., indecl., (quin-que-decem), *fifteen.*  
 Quingenti, æ, a, (quinque-centum), num. a., *five hundred.*  
 Quini, æ, a, (quinque), distrib. a., *five each.*  
 Quin-que, num. a., indecl., *five.*  
 Quintus, i, m., *a Roman præno-men*; abbr. Q.  
 Quirites, ium (um), (Cures), *Roman citizens.*  
 Quis, quæ, quid, interrog. pron., *who? which? what?* quid, *what? why?* sometimes with *ne, si, &c.*, used for aliquis, &c.  
 Quis-quam, quæ-quam, quid-quam (quic-quam), indef. pron., *any, any one, any thing.*  
 Quis-que, quæ-que, quod- or quid-que, distrib. and indef. pron., *each, every, whoever.*  
 Quò, ad. and conj., (qui), *whither, where, why, that, in order that.*  
 Quòd, conj., (qui), *that, because, in that or this, though, therefore*: quòd si, *whereas if, if now*: quod nisi, *but unless.*  
 Quoque, ad. and conj., *also, likewise.*  
 Quotidiānus, a, um, (quotīdie), a., *every day, daily.*  
 Quotīdie, ad., (quot-dies), *daily.*  
 Quum, (cūm), connective ad., (qui), *when, since, as, though,*

*while*: quum . . . tum, *not only . . . but also, both . . . and*: quum primum, *as soon as, or as soon as possible.*

Rapīna, æ, f., (rapio), *plunder, robbery, rapine.*

Ratis, is, f., *a raft, float, small ship.*

Raurāci, orum, m., *a Gallic tribe, north of the Helvetii, and south of the Rhenus.*

Recens, ntis, a., *recent, fresh, new.*

Re-cipio, ěre, ěpi, eptus, (re-capio, § 189. 5: ¶ 15. a. 2.), 3. tr., *to take back, receive, recover*: se recipĕre, *betake one's self, retreat, withdraw.*

Red-imo, ěre, ěmi, emptus, (re-emo, § 189. 2: ¶ 15. a. 2.), 3. tr., *to repurchase, redeem, recover, liberate, procure.*

Reditio, ōnis, f., (redeo, § 102. 7.), *a going or coming back, return.*

Regnum, i, n., (rex), *dominion, kingdom, sovereignty, empire.*

Rego, ěre, xi, ctus, (rex, ¶ 15. a. 1.), 3. tr., *to guide, conduct, rule.*

Re-linquo, ěre, iqui, ictus, (¶ ¶ 16. vi. Rem. 3: 17. ii.: 15. a. 2.), 3. tr., *to leave behind, relinquish.*

Reliquus, a, um, (re-linquo), a., *remaining, rest, residue.*

Re-maneo, ěre, nsi, nsus, (¶ 15. a. 1.), 2. intr., *to remain behind, remain, continue, endure.*

Reminscor, i, (memini, ¶ 16. vi. Rem. 3.), *to recall to mind, to remember.*



Remōtus, a, um, p. p. from remove.

Re-moveo, ēre, ovi, otus, (§§ 16. vi. Rem. 2 : 17. v.), 2. tr., to remove, withdraw, take away.

Re-nuncio, (nuntio), āre, āvi, ātus, (§§ 15. a. 1.), 1. tr., to bring or carry backward, report, declare, announce.

Re-pello, ēre, ūli, pulsus, (§ 163. 4. Ex. 1.), 3. tr., to drive or beat back, repel, drive away, repulse.

Repentinus, a, um, (repens), a., sudden, hasty, unexpected.

Re-perio, ire, ēri, ertus, (re-pario, §§ 163. 4. Ex. 1 : 189. 1.), 4. tr., to find, discover, perceive, learn, invent.

Re-prehendo, ēre, di, sus, (§§ 16. vi.), 3. tr., to reprove, blame, rebuke.

Re-pugno, āre, āvi, ātus, (§§ 15. a. 1.), 1. tr., to fight against, oppose, resist.

Res, ēi, f., thing, reality, fact, affair, circumstance, business : res gestæ, exploits : novæ res, change, revolution.

Re-scindo, ēre, idi, scissus, (§§ 16. vi. Rem. 3 : 15. a. 2.), 3. tr., to cut off, cut or break down, destroy, annul.

Re-spondeo, ēre, di, sus, (§ 163. 4. Ex. 1.), 2. tr., to promise or offer in return, answer, reply.

Responsum, i, n., (respondeo), an answer, response.

Res-publica, rei-publicæ, f., § 91. (res-publicus), the common-wealth, republic, government.

Re-stituo, ēre, ui, ūtus, (re-statuo, § 189. 4 : §§ 16. vi. Rem. 2.), 3. tr., to restore, replace, rebuild, renew.

Re-tineo, ēre, ui, entus, (re-teneo, § 189. 3 : §§ 15. a. 1.), 2. tr., to retain, hold back, restrain, check, repress.

Re-vertō, ēre, ti, sus, (§§ 16. vi.), 3. intr., to turn back, return, turn about.

Re-vertor, ti, reversus sum, 3. dep. intr., see revertō.

Rhenus, i, m., the River Rhine, rising in the Lepontine Alps ; it flows north-west, and empties into the German Ocean.

Rhodānus, i, m., the River Rhone ; it rises near the sources of the Rhine, and flows south through Lake Lemannus, and empties into the Sinus Gallicus, or Gulf of Lyons.

Ripa, æ, f., the bank of a river.

Rogo, āre, āvi, ātus, (§§ 15. a. 1.), 1. tr., to ask, request, demand, inquire.

Rogātum, (former supine), from rogo, to ask, request.

Romānus, a, um, (Roma), a., Roman.

Rota, æ, f., a wheel.

Sacro, āre, āvi, ātus, (sacer, §§ 15. a. 1.), 1. tr., to set apart, consecrate, dedicate, devote.

Sæpe, ad., comp. sæpius, sup. sæpissime, often, frequently.

Salus, ūtis, f., (salvus), safety, health, preservation.

Santōnes, um, m., a Celtic tribe



*in the west part of Gaul, north of the River Garumna.*

Satis, ad. and indecl. a., *enough, sufficiently, sufficient.*

Satis-facio, ěre, ěci, actus, (§ 15. a. 2.), 3. tr., *to satisfy, discharge one's duty, satisfy by an excuse or apology.*

Satius, ad. or a., comp. of satis, sup. satissĭme, *better, rather.*

Scelus, ěris, n., (§ 9. III. Rem. 1. (2.)), *a wicked deed, wickedness, crime.*

Scio, ěre, ěvi (ěi), ětus, (§ 15. a. 1.), 4. tr., *to know, understand, perceive.*

Se-cĕdo, ěre, ěssi, ěssus, (§ 15. a. 1: 17. I.), 3. intr., *to go away, withdraw, retire.*

Se-cerno, ěre, crĕvi, crĕtus, (§ 16. vi. Rem. 3. 4: 15. a. 1.), 3. tr., *to put apart, separate, sever.*

Secrĕtus, a, um, p. p. part., (se-cerno), *separated, separate, apart: secrĕtĕd, ad., separately, by itself.*

Se-cum, (see cum and sui), = cum se, though never written so.

Secundus, a, um, (sequor), a., *following, the second, next, favorable, propitious: secundum, ad. and prep. c. acc., after, nigh, near, close to: secundĕd, ad., secondly, favorably.*

Sed, conj., (adversative), *but, yet, (cf. at, autem.)*

Se-dĕcim, num. a., indecl., (sex-decem), *sixteen.*

Seditĭosus, a, um, (seditio), a., *factionous, turbulent, seditious.*

Segusiĕni, ōrum, m., *a Gallic*

*tribe, between the Ligĕris and the Rhodĕnus.*

Sementis, is, f., (semen), *a sowing or seeding.*

Semper, ad., *always, forever.*

Senĕtus, ūs, m., (senex), *the council of elders, senate.*

Semi, before vowels sem, *an inseparable particle, half.*

Seni, æ, a, num. distrib. a., *six each, six.*

Sententia, æ, f., (sentio), *sentiment, opinion, intention, judgment.*

Sentio, ěre, si, sus, (§ 15. a. 1.), 4. tr., *to perceive by the senses — feel, see, hear, notice, observe, think, suppose.*

Se-parĕtim, ad., (sepĕro), *separately, apart, severally.*

Septen-triĕnes, um, m., (septem-trio), *the constellation Arctos, the Bear, the north.*

Septĭmus, a, um, num. a., (septem), *the seventh.*

Sequĕna, æ, f., *a river of Gaul, rising in the northern part of the territory of the Ēdui, and flowing north-westerly; the Seine.*

Sequĕni, ōrum, m., *a Celtic tribe between the Helvetii, on the east, and the Ēdui on the west.*

Sequĕnus, a, um, a patrial a., *a Sequanian.*

Sequor, ě, secŭtus sum, (§ 17. II.), 3. dep. tr., *to follow, come or go after, attend, seek.*

Servitŭdo, ěnis, f., (servus, § 101. 3.), *servitude, slavery, bondage.*

Servĭtus, ūtis, f., (servus, § 101.



2. (3.)), *slavery, service, servitude*.
- Si, conj., (conditional), *if, though, whether, if indeed*.
- Simul, ad., *together, at once, at the same time, as soon as*.
- Sin, conj., (adversative), (si-ne), *but if, if however*.
- Sine, prep. c. ab., (se-ne, denoting separation from), *without*.
- Singŭli, æ, a, a., *single, separate, individual*.
- Singŭlus, a, um, usually in the plur.
- Si-ve, (seu), conj., *or if, or, whether*: sive . . . sive, sive . . . seu, sive . . . vel, *whether . . . or*.
- Socer, ěri, m., *a father-in-law*.
- Socius, i, m., *a fellow-associate, companion*: socius, a, um, a., *allied, associated*.
- Sol, ōlis, m., *the sun*.
- Solŭm, ad., (solus), *alone, only*: non solŭm . . . sed etiam, *not only . . . but also*.
- Solus, a, um, (gen. ius, dat. i.), a., *alone, only, single, sole*.
- Soror, ōris, f., *a sister*.
- Spatium, i, n., *space, distance, interval, extent*.
- Specto, āre, āvi, ātus, (specio, § 187. II. 1. (a.): ¶ 15. a. 1.), 1. tr., *to see, observe, examine, watch, to look or be turned towards*.
- Spero, āre, āvi, ātus, (spes, ¶ 15. a. 1.), 1. tr., *to expect, look for, hope, trust*.
- Spes, ěi, f., *hope, expectation, confidence*.
- Sponte, ab., spontis, gen., (obsolete spons): suā sponte, *of one's own accord, voluntarily, willingly*.
- Statuo, ěre, ui, ūtus, (status, ¶ 16. VI. Rem. 2.), 3. tr., *to set up, place, station, erect, determine, decide, judge, conclude*.
- Studeo, ěre, ui, —, (¶ 15. a. 1.), 2. intr., *to be zealous or eager for, attend to, study, favor, cultivate, wish for, desire*.
- Studium, i, n., (studeo,) *zeal, affection, attachment, study*.
- Sub, prep. c. acc. and ab., (with the acc., *to the place of under*; c. ab., *the place under which*), *to, under, below, beneath, in*.
- Sub-eo, ire, ii, ĩtus, irr., § 182. 4. intr. and tr., *to go or come under, come up to, advance or proceed to a place, approach, encounter, undergo*.
- Sub-ĭgo, ěre, ěgi, actus, (sub-ago, § 189. 2: ¶ 15. a. 2.), 3. tr., *to force, compel, drive, reduce, subdue*.
- Sub-ĭtĉ, ad., (sub-eo), *suddenly, hastily, quickly*.
- Sub-jicio, ěre, ěci, ectus, (sub-jacio, § 189. 5: ¶ 15. a. 2.), 3. tr., *to throw, put or place under, expose, subject*.
- Sublātus, a, um, p. p. from tollo, *elated, proud*.
- Sub-lĕvo, āre, āvi, ātus, (¶ 15. a. 1.), 1. tr., *to sustain, assist, support, lighten, relieve*.
- Sub-sisto, ěre, stĭti, —, (sisto = si-sto, ¶¶ 16. VI. Rem. 3. n. 15. a. 3.), 3. intr. and tr., *to*



*stay, abide, stop, halt, withstand.*

Sub-vĕho, ěre, xi, ctus, (§ 15. a. 1.), 3. tr., *to carry, bring up, convey.*

Suc-cĕdo, ěre, essi, essus, (sub-cedo, § 15. a. 1.), 3. intr., *to come up, succeed, come after, prosper, supply the place of.*

Suf-fĕro, erre, sustŭli, sublĕtus, (sub-fero), irr. tr., *to hold up, bear, support, suffer, endure.*

Sui, gen. of the subst. pron., § 133.

Sum, esse, fui, futŭrus, (§ 153 : § 25.), irr. intr., *to be, exist.*

Summus, a, um, a., sup. of supĕrus, *uppermost, highest, chief, supreme, the summit of.*

Sumo, ěre, sumpsi, sumptus, (perhaps sub-emo, §§ 15. a. 1 : 17. III.), 3. tr., *to take, take up, procure, assume, undertake, begin.*

Sumptus, a, um, p. p. from sumo.

Superior, ius, a., comp. of superus, *higher, upper, former, superior.*

Supĕro, āre, āvi, ātus, (super, § 15. a. 1.), 1. tr., *to surpass, overcome, excel, vanquish, prevail, remain.*

Supĕrus, a, um, (super), a., comp. superior, sup. suprĕmus or summus, *above, upper, on high, over.*

Sup-pĕto, ěre, iŭi (ii), itus, (sub-peto, § 15. a. 1.), 3. intr., *to be at hand or present, to occur, to suffice, to be equal or sufficient for.*

Supplicium, i, n., (supplex), a

*supplication, punishment, penalty.*

Sus-cipio, ěre, ĕpi, eptus, (sub-capio, § 189. 5 : § 15. a. 2.), 3. tr., *to take or lift up, take, catch, undertake.*

Sus-picio, ěre, exi, ctus, (sub-specio, § 189. 2 : § 15. a. 1.), 3. tr. and intr., *to mistrust, suspect.*

Suspicio, ōnis, f., (suspicio), *suspicion, distrust.*

Suus, a, um, (sui), poss. and reflexive pron., *one's own, his, her, or its own, their own, peculiar, appropriate.*

Sylva or silva, æ, f., *a wood, forest, tree, grove.*

Taceo, ěre, ui, itus, (§ 15. a. 1.), 2. intr., *to be silent, still, quiet.*

Tam, ad., (comparison, answered usually by quā), *so, so much, so far . . . tam . . . quā, so much . . . as.*

Tamen, conj., (adversative), *yet, notwithstanding, nevertheless, still.*

Tantus, a, um, (tam-tus), *so much, so great, so many, such : tantus . . . quantus, so much . . . as much, so great or many . . . as great or many, &c.*

Tectum, i, n., (tego), *a roof or covering, house, dwelling.*

Tego, ěre, xi, ctus, (§ 15. a. 1.), 3. tr., *to cover, hide, conceal, defend.*

Telum, i, n., *a weapon, (offensive), dart, spear, javelin, &c.*



Temperantia, æ, f., (temperans, § 101. 1.), *temperance, sobriety, moderation, self-control.*

Tempĕro, āre, āvi, ātus, (tempus, ¶ 15. a. 1.), 1. tr. and intr., *to moderate, restrain, abstain, refrain from, mitigate.*

Tempus, ōris, n., (¶ 9. III. Rem. 1. (2.)), *time, season, opportunity.*

Teneo, ĕre, ui, ntus, (¶ 15. a. 1.), 2. tr., *to hold, keep, have, possess, occupy, detain, keep back.*

Tento, āre, āvi, ātus, (tendo, § 187. II. 1. (a.)): ¶ 15. a. 1.), 1. tr., *to try, attempt, endeavor, prove, attack, tamper with, entice.*

Terra, æ, f., *the earth, land, ground, soil.*

Tertius, a, um, (tres = ter), num. a., *the third.*

Testis, is, c., *a witness.*

Tigurini, ōrum, m., *a Helvetian tribe.*

Tigurinus pagus, (inus, a, um, a.)

Timeo, ĕre, ui, —, (¶ 15. a. 1.), 2. tr. and intr., *to fear, be afraid of, apprehend, dread.*

Titus, i, m., *a Roman prænomen.*

Tolosātes, um, m., *a Gallic tribe of Aquitania.*

Totus, a, um, a., (gen. ius), *the whole, entire, all.*

Trado, ĕre, didi, itus, (trans-do, ¶ 18: 15. a.), 3. tr., *to give up, consign, surrender, betray, hand down, commit, commend.*

Trans, prep. c. acc., (across to), *on the farther side of, over, beyond, across.*

Trans-dūco, ĕre, xi, ctus, (traduco), (¶ 15. a. 1.), 3. tr., *to lead or carry over, transport, transfer.*

Trans-eo, ire, ii, itus, irr., § 182. 4. tr., *to go or pass over, cross, pass.*

Tres, ium, (§ 109.), num. a., *three.*

Tribuo, ĕre, ui, ūtus, (¶ 16. VI. Rem. 2.), 3. tr., *to assign, impart, grant, give, attribute.*

Tribus, ūs, f., *a tribe.*

Tu, tui, per. pron., *thou.*

Tulingi, ōrum, *a German tribe, north of the Helvetii, on the other side of the Rhine.*

Tuus, a, um, a., (tu), poss. pron., *thine, yours.*

Ubi, ad., (relative ad. of place), *in which place, where, when, as soon as.*

Ulciscor, i, ultus sum, (primitive root ulc, ulc-tus = ultus, ¶ 17. IV. 3.), dep. tr., *to avenge, revenge.*

Ullus, a, um, (contr. dimin. of unulus = unus-ulus), *any, any one.*

Ulterior, ius, sup. ultĭmus, a., *farther, beyond, more remote.*

Ultra, ad. and prep. c. acc., *beyond, past, further.*

Ultus, a, um, p. p. from ulciscor.

Undique, ad., (unde-que), *from all parts or sides, on all sides, every where.*

Unquam or umquam, ad., (of time indef.), *at any time, ever.*

Urbs, urbis, f., (orbis), *a city, the city, (Rome).*



- Unus, a, um, (gen. unus), num. a., *one, a single, alone, only, the same.*
- Usus, ūs, m., (utor), *use, advantage, profit, benefit, practice, skill.*
- Ut, uti, conj., (final and complementary), *that, in order that, so that, although: ad., as, just as, when.*
- Uter, tra, trum, (gen. utrius), pron., *which of the two, which.*
- Utor, i, usus sum, 3. dep., c. ab., *to use, make use of, supply one's need with, enjoy.*
- Uxor, ōris, f., *a wife, consort.*
- Vadum, i, n., *a ford, a shallow place.*
- Vagor, āri, ātus sum, (vagus), 1. dep. intr., *to wander, roam, move, go abroad.*
- Valeo, ēre, ui, ltus, (§ 15. a. 1.), 2. intr., *to be strong or well, to have strength, force, or vigor, to be able, to be worth or of value.*
- Valerius Procillus, i, m., *a man of distinction in the Roman province, a friend and an ambassador of Cæsar.*
- Vasto, āre, āvi, ātus, (vastus, § 187. I. 1. (a.): § 15. a. 1.), tr., *to lay waste, devastate, ravage.*
- Vectigal, ālis, n., (veho), *a toll, tax, impost: revenue, rent, income.*
- Vehēmens, tis, a., *very eager, violent, earnest, ardent, pressing.*
- Vel, conj., (alternative), (volo), or, even: vel . . . vel, either . . . or.
- Venēror, āri, ātus sum, 1. dep. tr., *to reverence, worship, venerate.*
- Venio, ire, vēni, ventus, (§ 15. a. 2.), 4. intr., *to go, come, arrive.*
- Verbum, i, n., *a word: verba, plur., words, expressions, conversation.*
- Vereor, ēri, ltus sum, 2. dep. tr. and intr., *to fear, reverence, revere, be afraid, stand in awe of.*
- Vergo, ēre, si, —, (§ 15. a. 1: 17. IV.), *to bend, turn, to be situated, inclined.*
- Vergobrētus, i, m., *the title of the chief magistrate among the Ædui.*
- Verò, ad. and conj., (verus), *in truth, truly, surely: but, but indeed.*
- Verudoctius, i, m., *a Helvetian chieftain, sent as an ambassador to Cæsar.*
- Verus, a, um, a., *true, real, actual, genuine.*
- Vester, tra, trum, (vos), poss. pron., *your.*
- Vetus, ēris, a., comp. veterior, sup. veterrimus, § 125. 1., *old, aged, ancient.*
- Vexo, āre, āvi, ātus, (veho, § 187. II. 1. (a.): § 15. a. 1.), 1. tr., *to agitate, harass, molest, vex, injure.*
- Via, æ, f., (eo, root i), *a way, road, pass: viâ, by way of.*
- Victoria, æ, f., (victor, § 101. 1.), *victory.*



- Vicus, i, m., *a row of houses, street, village, hamlet.*
- Video, ěre, idi, isus, (§ 15. a. 2.), *to see with the eyes, see, behold, perceive, understand, learn.*
- Videor, ěri, isus, (video, like a deponent verb), *to seem, appear.*
- Vigil, ilis, a., (vigeo), *awake, on the watch, alert.*
- Vigilia, æ, f., (vigil), *watch, guard, wakefulness.*
- Vigilo, āre, āvi, ātus, (vigil, § 187. I. 1. (a.), § 15. a. 1.), 1. intr., *to be on the watch, to be wakeful or vigilant.*
- Viginti, num. a., indecl., *twenty.*
- Vinco, ěre, ici, ictus, (§ 16. VI. Rem. 3: 15. a. 2.), 3. tr., *to conquer, overcome, vanquish, subdue, surpass, excel.*
- Vinculum, i, n., (vincio, § 102. 5. (a.)), *a bond, band: vincula, ōrum, plur., fetters, chains; prison.*
- Vir, iri, m., (vis), *man*, (in distinction from woman, cf. homo), *a husband, hero.*
- Virtus, ūtis, f., (vir, § 101. 2. (3.)), *after the analogy of derivatives from adjectives, manliness, courage, bravery, merit, virtue.*
- Vis, vis, (plur. vires, ium), f., *strength, force, power, violence, effect, number, abundance.*
- Vita, æ, f., (vivo), *life, mode of living.*
- Vito, āre, āvi, ātus, (§ 15. a. 1.), 1. tr., *to shun, avoid, beware of, escape.*
- Vivo, ěre, xi, ctus, (§ 15. a. 1: 17. I. II. V.), 3. intr., *to live, be alive, to be maintained.*
- Vix, ad., *scarcely, hardly, with difficulty.*
- Voco, āre, āvi, ātus, (vox, § 187. I. 1. (a.)), 1. tr., *to call, call upon, summon, invoke.*
- Vocantii, ōrum, m., *a Gallic tribe in the south-eastern part of Gaul, on the east of the Rhone, and about a hundred miles from its mouth.*
- Volo, velle, volui, irr., § 178., tr. and intr., *to will, wish, be willing, purpose, intend, choose, ordain.*
- Voluntas, ātis, f., (volens, (volo), § 101. 2. (2.)), *will, wish, desire, inclination.*
- Vulgus, i, n., (sometimes m.), *the mass, common people, multitude, throng.*
- Vulnĕro, āre, āvi, ātus, (vulnus, § 187. I. 1. (a.): § 15. a. 1.), 1. tr., *to wound, hurt, injure.*



# ABBREVIATIONS.

---

Ablative, (ab.).	Intransitive, (intr.).
Abbreviation, (abbr.).	Irregular, (irr.).
Accusative, (ac., acc.).	Line, (L.).
Active, (act.).	Masculine, (m.).
Active voice, (a. v.).	Neuter, (n., neut.).
Adjective, (a.).	Nominative, (N., nom.).
Before, (>).	Note, (N.).
Common, (c.).	Numeral, (num.).
Comparative, (comp.).	Opposed, (opp.).
Compare, (cf.).	Page, (P.).
Connective, (con.).	Participle, (p., part.).
Contract, (contr.).	Passive, (pass.).
Conjunction, (conj.).	Passive voice, (p. v.).
Dative, (D., dat.).	Perfect, (perf.).
Defective, (def.).	Perfect participle, (p. p.).
Deponent, (dep.).	Personal, (pers.).
Diminutive, (dim.).	Plural, (plur.).
Distributive, (distrib.).	Possessive, (poss.).
Doubtful, (d.).	Preposition, (prep.).
Equal, (=).	Present, (pres.).
Euphonic, (euph.).	Pronoun, (pron.).
Exception, (ex.).	Relative, (rel.).
Feminine, (f.).	Remark, (Rem.).
Future, (F., fut.).	Rule, (R.).
Genitive, (G., gen.).	Section, (§).
Imperative, (imper.).	Semi, (sem.).
Imperfect, (imp.).	Singular, (sing.).
Impersonal, (impers.).	Substantive, (subst.).
Inceptive, (incep.).	Superlative, (sup.).
Indeclinable, (indecl.).	Table, (¶).
Indefinite, (indef.).	With, (c.).
Indicative, (ind.).	



































